

目 录

名词	4
名词的数	4
名词的格	6
名词的性	7
冠词	8
定冠词	8
不定冠词	11
零冠词(无冠词)	12
代词	14
代词的种类及 5 种基本代词的用法	14
疑问代词和关系代词	17
不定代词的用法	19
数词	21
数词的种类	21
小数、分数、百分数和运算符号	23
时间、货币和编码	24
动词的时态	25
动词的时态	25
动词的过去时	27
动词的将来时	28
被动语态	30
被动语态	30
助动词与情态动词	32
助动词 be、have 和 do	32

情态动词 can、may、must 的用法	33
情态动词的其他形式	35
虚拟语气	38
在非真实条件句中的用法	38
虚拟语气在从句中的用法	41
不定式	44
不定式(短语)作主语、表语、宾语、补足语	44
不定式(短语)作定语、状语、独立成分	46
不定式的时态、复合结构及省略	48
动名词	50
动名词在句子中的成分	50
动名词的结构和形式	53
现在分词	54
现在分词在句子中的成分	54
现在分词的结构和时态	57
过去分词	59
过去分词在句子中的成分	59
过去分词的结构	60
形容词和副词	61
形容词的功用	61
副词的功用	63
形容词和副词的比较级	66
介词	68
介词的种类、短语及搭配	68
并列联句	72
并列连词	72
名词性从句	75

名词性从句	75
定语从句	77
定语从句	77
非限制性定语从句	80
状语从句	82
状语从句(1)	82
状语从句(2)	85
倒装	88
倒装	88
一致关系	91
一致关系	91
省略	94
省略	94
强调结构	99
强调结构	99
附录	100
标点符号的用法	100
公共场所常见提示用语	103
常见英文名字 Common Forenames	103
英语学习网站资源域名 Websites for English Learning	104
生活中常见的英语缩略词 Useful Abbreviations	104

名词

名词的数

1. 名词复数的规则变化形式

 词尾字母	变化方式	例 词
通常情况	加-s	bird-birds, shop-shops, lake-lakes
-ch,-sh,-s,-x,-z	加-es	church-churches, dish-dishes, class-classes, box-boxes
辅音字母+y	变-y 为-i 再加-es	factory-factories, fly-flies, family-families, baby-babies
-0	加-es	tomato-tomatoes, hero-heroes
-f 或-fe	变-f 或-fe 为-v 再加-es	leaf-leaves, thief-thieves, shelf-shelves, knife-knives, life-lives, half-halves

有些以-f或-fe结尾的名词复数只加-s,读作/s/。如:

gulf - gulfs 海湾 proof - proofs 证据 chief - chiefs 首领 roof - roofs 屋顶

有些以-y 结尾的专有名词的复数直接加-s。如:

Henry - Henrys 亨利 Mary - Marys 玛丽

有些以辅音字母 + o 结尾的名词的复数直接加-s。如:

piano - pianos 钢琴 photo - photos 照片 memo - memos 备忘录 solo - solos 独唱

有些以字母-o 结尾的名词有两种复数形式,可以加-s,也可以加-es。如:

motto - mottos/mottoes 箴言 cargo - cargos/cargoes 货物 halo - halos/haloes 光环 grotto - grottos/grottoes 洞穴

以-oo 或元音字母加-o 结尾的名词只加-s。如:

banboo - bamboos 竹子 video - videos 电视 kangaroo - kangaroos 袋鼠 radio - radios 收音机

只有一个/ s /音结尾的名词 , 复数形式读/ ziz /。 如: house 房子

2. 名词复数的不规则变化形式

沿用古英语复数形式的名词。如:

tooth - teeth 牙齿 mouse - mice 老鼠 foot - feet 脚 woman - women 妇女 安尺 goose - geese 鹅 child - children 孩子 ox - oxen 牛 louse - lice 虱子

外来词的复数形式来自拉丁语、希腊语、法语等的名词。如:

希腊语 analysis - analyses 分析 phenomenon - phenomena 现象 crisis - crises 危机 thesis - theses 论文

拉丁语 datum - data 数据

medium - media 媒介

formula - formulae 公式 radius - radii 半径

法语

bureau - bureaux / bureaus 局;司;处 madam - mesdames / madams 夫人;女士

3. 复合名词的复数形式

将主要成分变为复数形式。如:

looker-on—lookers-on 旁观者

runner-up—runners-up 亚军

passer-by—passers-by 过路人

editor-in-chief—editors-in-chief 总编辑

将最末一个构成部分变为复数形式。如:

breakfast—breakfasts 早餐

gentleman—gentlemen 绅士

afternoon—afternoons 下午 go-between—go-betweens 中间人

将两个组成部分均变为复数(这种复合名词中的第一个名词须是 man 或 woman)。如:

man doctor—men doctors 男医生 woman singer—women singers 女歌手

4. 单复数同形的名词

cattle 牛 deer 鹿 Chinese 中国人

buffalo 水牛 giraffe 长颈鹿 Japanese 日本人

bison 野牛 reindeer 驯鹿 Swiss 瑞士人 sheep 羊

fish 鱼 species 种类 aircraft 飞机

shark 鲨鱼 series 系列 barracks 营房

means 方式 headquarters 司令部

要注意:单复数同形的名词作主语时,谓语动词用单数还是复数取决于主语数的意义。

5. 只有复数形式的名词

有些名词为自然复数名词,即只有复数形式的名词(往往指一些成双成对的、数量较多的或以-ing 结尾的词)。如:

trousers 裤子 compasses 圆规 glasses 眼镜 pants 裤子 scales 天平 scissors 剪刀 arms 武器 assets 资产 thanks 感谢 amends 赔偿 sweepings 清扫物 clippings 剪下的东西

tweezers 镊子 jeans 牛仔裤 guts 胆量 suds 肥皂沫 findings 调查结果

spectacles 眼镜

6. 不可数名词的数

不可数名词通常没有复数形式,但可以借助单位词表示一定的数量。如:

a piece of paper 一张纸 a piece of thread 一根线 a cup of coffee 一杯咖啡 a can of orange juice 一罐橘汁 a glass of water 一杯水 a slice of bacon 一片腊肉 a loaf of bread 一块面包 a portion of soup 一份汤 a lock of hair 一绺头发 a grain of rice 一粒米 a stick of chalk 一根粉笔 a bar of soap 一条肥皂 a ray of hope 一线希望 a shower of criticism 一阵批评

7. 集体名词的数

单数类集体名词,如:

a ripple of laughter 一阵笑声

humanity 人类 mankind 人类 baggage 行李 clothing 衣服 equipment 设备 furniture 家具 glassware 玻璃器具 jewelry 珠宝 luggage 行李 machinery 机械 pottery 陶器 poetry 诗

a burst of applause 一阵掌声

复数类集体名词,如:

faculty 全体人员 poultry 家禽 cattle 牛 folk 人 people 人民 police 警察

单复数同形类集体名词(形式为单数,但可以表示单数和复数两种意义),如:

government 政府	generation 一代	audience 观众
jury 陪审团	crew 机组人员	army 军队
band 乐队	board 董事会	cabinet 内阁
class 班级	committee 委员会	company 公司

名词的格

1. 's 属格

单词形式	构成方式	举例
普通单数名词	在词尾加's	Henry's cat 亨利的猫
词尾已有 -s 的复数名词	在词尾只加一个'	the two boys'mother 那两个男孩的母亲
词尾不带 -s 的复数名词	在词尾加's	Children's day 儿童节
复合名词	在最后一个词的词尾加's	his mother-in-law's letter 他岳母的信
表示几个词共同 的所有关系	在最后一个词的词尾加's	Mary and Tom's books 玛丽和汤姆共有的书
表示几个词各自 的所有关系	在每个词的词尾都加's	Mary's and Tom's books 玛丽和汤姆各自的书

's 属格常用于构成表示有生命的东西的名词的所有格,但也可以构成某些表示无生命的东西的名词的所有格。

表时间	a week's time 一周的时间
表距离	ten miles' distance 十英里的距离
表度量衡及价值	five dollars' worth of meat 价值五美元的肉
表国家、城市等实体	China's future 中国的未来
表群体	the committee's decision 委员会的决定
表自然现象	the earth's gravity 地球的引力
表拟人	a wolf in sheep's clothing 披着羊皮的狼
某些固定说法	at death's door 濒于死亡; in one's mind's eye 据想象

2. of 属格

用法	举例
用于无生命的东西	the name of the song 歌名 the legs of the table 桌子的腿
用于名词化的词	the livelihood of the poor 穷人的生计 with the help of the teacher 在老师的帮助下
表动宾关系	the use of nuclear energy 利用原子能 the occupation of the city 占领城市
表同位关系	the three of them 他们三个人 the City of New York 纽约市

(1) 当表示有生命的东西的名词本身带有短语或从句作定语时,则不用's 属格,要用 of 属格。如:

What is the name of the girl sitting near the door?

坐在门附近的那个女孩叫什么名字?(名词 girl 后有现在分词短语作定语)

We have the support of the people of the whole world .

我们得到了全世界人民的支持。(名词 people 后有 of 短语作定语)

The advise of the old man I met during a journey is very important for me. 在一次旅游中遇到的一位老人的建议对我很重要。(名词 man 后有定语从句)

(2) of 属格适用于某些名词化的表示人的形容词。如:

the livelihood of the poor 穷人的生计

the struggle of the oppressed 被压迫人民的斗争

3. 双重属格

双重属格与's 属格及 of 属格都有所区别,如下例 a friend of my mother's 的含义是表示我母亲还有其他朋友,而用's 属格表示出的 my mother's friend 指强调母亲和这个朋友的关系,不涉及其他人。再如 a picture of Jim's 是指吉姆所拥有的照片中的一张,而 a picture of Jim 是指一张吉姆的照片,意指照片上的人是吉姆。

用法	举例
表示部分	a friend of my mother's 我母亲的朋友 a picture of Jim's 吉姆的一张照片
表示感情色彩	this lovely child of your sister's 你姐姐的这个可爱的女孩

名词的性

名词的性

1. 一些性别名词举例

英语名词的性往往自身就可以表明,在单词形式上没有性的特征和变化。如:

(1) 表示人的性别名词:

阳性	阴性	阳性	阴性
man 男人	woman 女人	boy 男孩	girl 女孩
prince 王子	princess 公主	god 神	goddess 女神
bridegroom 新郎	bride 新娘	hero 英雄	heroine 女英雄
lad 少年	lass 少女	monk 和尚	nun 尼姑
sir 先生	madam 女士	usher 引座员	usherette 女引座员
king 国王	queen 王后	son 儿子	daughter 女儿
brother 兄弟	sister 姐妹	nephew 侄子	niece 侄女

(2) 表示动物的性别名词:

阳性	阴性	阳性	阴性
fox 狐狸	vixen 母狐狸	bull 公牛	cow 母牛
stallion 公马	mare 母马	gander 公鹅	goose 母鹅
buck/stag 雄鹿	doe 雌鹿	lion 公狮	lioness 母狮
pig 公猪	sow 母猪	tiger 雄虎	tigress 母老虎
ram 公羊	ewe 母羊	boar 公野猪	sow 母野猪
cock 公鸡	hen 母鸡	leopard 公豹	leopardess 雌豹

2. 一些补充说明

(1) 英语中有很多名词分不出阴阳性,如果需要表明所指人或东西的性别,则往往在这类名词前加 man/male 或 he- 来表示阳性/男性, 加 woman/female 或 she- 来表示阴性/女性。如:

man teacher 男教师	woman writer 女作家	male elephant 公象
female monkey 母猴	woman doctor 女医生	woman scientist 女科学家
man servant 男仆人	female cook 女厨师	female student 女学生
male nurse 男护士	he-goat 公羊	she-wolf 母狼

(2) 有些中性名词习惯上被认为属于阳性或阴性。

通常被视为阳性的中性名词有: sun(太阳), ocean(海洋), winter(冬天)等。

通常被视为阴性的中性名词有:country(国家), nation(民族), ship(船), car(小汽车), earth(地球 night(夜晚), moon(月亮)等。

随着英语语言的变化和发展,这种习惯性的认识也渐渐发生了变化。如当说到 country 时 ,已逐渐使用 it 来指代,而很少用 she 或 her 了。

(3) man 的通性用法除了表示"男人"外,还可以表示"人、人类"的意思。如:

Any man can do that. 谁都能做那件事。

Man must stop polluting the environment . 人类应该停止破坏环境。

冠词

定冠词

1. 定冠词特指某个(某些)人或某个(某些)事物

Many people came here to visit the old castle.

很多人来这里参观这座古城堡。

The man in black is a magician.

穿黑色衣服的那个人是个魔术师。

2. 定冠词用于第二次提到或复述上文提过的人或事物

He was given a pen and a form. He is going to use the pen to fill out the form.

他拿到一支笔和一张表。他要用这支笔填这张表。

They went into a small pub. The pub was crowded with people.

他们进了一家小餐馆,那个餐馆里挤满了人。

3. 定冠词用于交际环境中各方彼此熟悉的人或事物

The car is badly damaged.

这辆车损坏严重。(交际各方都知道是哪辆车)

Please close the door.

请关上门。(交际各方都知道是哪个门)

4. 定冠词用于可数名词前表示某一类人或事物

The wheel is said to be the first invention of man.

据说,轮子是人类的第一项发明。

The horse is a useful animal.

马是一种有用的动物。

5. 定冠词用于某些名词或形容词前,表示一类人、一个民族、阶级或阶层

the Chinese 中国人	the poor 穷人
the nobility 贵族	the boutgeoisie 资产阶级
the old 老年人	the college students 大学生
the dead 死者	the unemployed 失业者
the deaf 聋人	the intellectuals 知识分子

6. 定冠词表示世界上独一无二的事物

the sun 太阳	the moon 月亮
the earth 地球	the North Pole 北极
the universe 宇宙	the globe 全球,全世界
the world 世界	the atmosphere 大气层

7. 定冠词用于某些专有名词前面

定冠词用于某些专有名词削回 用定冠词的专有名词	例词
江河、海洋、海峡、海湾、山脉、群岛、沙漠等名词前	the Changjiang River 长江 the Thames 泰晤士河 the Nile 尼罗河 the Suez Canal 苏伊士运河 the Pacific 太平洋 the Hudson River 哈得逊河 the India Ocean 印度洋 the Red Sea 红海 the Dead Sea 红海 the Dead Sea 死海 the Baltic 波罗的海 the Mediterranean Sea 地中海 the English Channel 英吉利海峡 the Taiwan straits 台湾海峡 the Bay of Biscay 比斯开湾 the Persian Gulf 波斯湾 the Straits of Dover 多佛湾 the Gulf of Mexico 墨西哥湾 the Alps 阿尔卑斯山 the Himalayas 喜马拉雅山脉 the Philippines 菲律宾群岛 the Gobi Desert 戈壁沙漠 the Sahara Desert 撒哈拉大沙漠
以普通名词构成的国家或机构名称前	the People's Republic of China 中华人民共和国 the United Kingdom 联合王国 the Sudan 苏丹 the United states 美国 the Hague 海牙 the yemen 也门 the State council 国务院 the Communist Party of China 中国共产党 the National People's Congress 全国人民代表大会 the Ministry of Education 教育部 the State Department 美国国务院 the Senate 参议院(美国) the House of Representatives 众议院(美国) the House of Commons 下议院 the House of Commons 下议院 the Democratic Party 民主党 the Republican Party 共和党 the Conservative Party 保守党 the Labour Party 工党 the Associated Press 美联社 the University of London 伦敦大学
公共建筑名称前	the Beijing Station 北京火车站 the Great Hall of the people 人民大会堂 the National Gallery 国家美术馆

	the History Museum 历史博物馆 the Great Wall 长城 the Military Museum 军事博物馆 the Workers' Gymnasium 工人体育馆 the Capital Theatre 首都剧场 the British Museum 不列颠博物馆 the Louvre 罗浮宫
报刊、杂志、书籍、会议、条约前	The People's Daily 人民日报 The Daily Mail 每日电讯报 The New York Times 纽约时报 The Times 泰晤士报 The Washionton Post 华盛顿邮报 The Economist 经济学家(杂志) The Atlantic 大西洋杂志 The Odyssey 《奥德赛》 The Paradise Lost 《失乐园》 The 16th Party Congress 党的十六大 The Atlantic Pact 大西洋公约 The Geneva Agreement 日内瓦协议
姓氏的复数形式前	the Browns 布朗一家 the Smiths 史密斯一家 the Wangs 王家

在海岛、山峰以及湖泊等地理名词前不加定冠词。如:

Christmas Island 圣诞岛 Mount Jolmo Lungma 珠穆朗玛峰 Lake Baikal 贝加尔湖

但是与 "of" 连用时这类名词要加定冠词。如:

the Lake of Geneva 日内瓦湖 the Island of Taiwan 台湾岛

8. 定冠词用于形容词最高级前

This is the most interesting book I have ever read.

这是我读过的最有趣的一本书。

He was the poorest man here years ago, but now he is a rich man.

几年前他是这儿最穷的人,但现在他成了富人。

9. 定冠词用于序数词前

The first thing to be done now is to have a square meal.

现在要做的第一件事就是大吃一顿。

She is in the third group. 她在第三组。

10. 定冠词用于表示标准或单位的名词前

sell by the pound 论磅出售 rent a house by the month 按月租房 buy coal by the ton 论吨买煤 sell eggs by the dozen 论打出售鸡蛋

11. 定冠词用在 play 后与乐器连用

12. 定冠词用于某些习语中

tell the truth 说真话	put the blame on sb 归咎于某人
keep the peace 维持治安	in the dark 在暗处
on the average 平均	keep the house 居家不外出
in the air 在空中	on the spot 当场
in the sun 在阳光下	on the alert 警惕
on the right 在右边	in the distance 在远处
act the lord 逞威风	on the contrary 相反

by the way 顺便说一句	out of the question 不可能
in the right 有道理	take the field 出征
carry the day 获胜	in the future 未来
in the end 最终	take the consequences 自食其果
on the air 广播	burn the midnight oil 开夜车
to the point 切题	beside the question 离题
play the fool 做傻事	on the rise/fall 增长/下降
on the whole 总的说来	on the increase/decrease 增长/下降
in the open 在户外	in the morning/afternoon/evening 在早晨/下午/晚上

不定冠词

1. 不定冠词指任何一类人、动物或事物

An ocean is bigger than a sea. 洋比海大。 A car must be insured. 汽车一定要上保险。

2. 不定冠词表示某个人或物

There is a Mr Bush to see you. 有位布什先生要见你。 English is a useful tool in our communication. 英语是我们交流中一种有用的工具。

3. 不定冠词用在某些数字表示的短语中

a million years 一百万年	a score of people 二十人
a dozen eggs 一打鸡蛋	a thousand people 一千人

4. 不定冠词用在价格、速度、比率等短语中

5 pence a dozen 5 便士一打	60 kilometers an hour 每小时六十公里
twice an hour 每小时两次	forty hours a week 每星期 40 小时

5. 不定冠词用于某些习语

a long time 很长时间	a few 有几个
a little 有一点	get a grip of 掌握
in a wordord 总而言之	in a temper 生气
keep an eye on 照看	have a gallop 快马加
take a walk 散步	at a loss 不知所措
have a try 试一下	make a fool of 捉弄
all of a sudden 突然	on a large scale 大规模地
make a racket 大声喧哗	in a hurry 急忙
want a go 试一下	as a matter of fact 事实上
take a break 休息一下	take a bow 谢幕
as a rule 通常	put an end to 结束
as a result 因此	as a whole 一般地说
come to an end 结束	have a good time 玩得痛快
with a view to 为了	with a will 决心
have a cold 患感冒	it's a pity that 真可惜
in a way 有些	have a rest 休息一会儿
make a living 谋生	have a word with 与谈话

make a fire 生火	make a fortune 发财
make a study of 研究	take an interest in 对感兴趣

零冠词 (无冠词)

1. 零冠词用于抽象名词前

Misfortunes never come singly. 祸不单行。 Wisdom is better than strength. 智慧胜于力量。 Sports is good for health. 运动有益于健康。

2. 零冠词用于物质名词前

The windows are all covered with boards. 窗户全用木板堵上了。 Blood is thicker than water. 血浓于水。

3. 用零冠词的专有名词

用零过词的专有名词 	
(有称号或头衔的) 人名	William Shakespeare 威廉-莎士比亚 Miss Smith 史密斯小姐 Queen Elizabeth 伊丽莎白女王
村落、乡镇、城市等	Craford Village 克拉福村 New York City 纽约城 London 伦敦
区、州、县、省、国家、洲等	Florida 佛罗里达州 Quebec 魁北克省 France 法国 Europe 欧洲 Asia 亚洲
山峰、湖泊、海港、海岛等	Fragrant Mountain 香山 Lake Success 成功湖 Pearl Harbour 珍珠港 Port Said 塞得港
街巷、花园、公园、广场、市场等	Wall Street 华尔街 Madison Avenue 麦迪逊路 Changan Boulevard 长安街 Hyde Park 海德公园 Piccadilly Circus 皮卡迪里广场 Trafalgar Square 特拉法加广场 Market Drayton 德雷顿市场
别墅、教堂、城堡、 车站等	Nest Cottage 内斯特别墅 New Cross Station 新十字车站 Westminster Abbey 西敏寺(威斯敏斯特教堂) Canterbury Cathedral 坎特伯雷大教堂 Holy Mother Church 圣母教堂 Windsor Castle 温莎城堡
上帝、圣经等	God 上帝 Paradise 乐园(第一字母有时可小写) Heaven 天国(第一字母有时可小写) Hell 地狱(常小写作 hell) Scripture 基督教《圣经》(=the Bible) Holy Writ 基督教《圣经》 Genesis 《创世纪》
行星、星座等	Mercury 水星

	Venus 金星 Jupiter 木星 Uranus 天王星 Neptune 海王星 Polaris 北极星 Little Bear 小熊座
公司、工厂、农场、大专院校等	Dala Farm 达拉农场 Oxford University 牛津大学 Eaton College 伊顿公学 Winchester College 温切斯特学院
议会、政府、总部 (包括军、师、旅、 团、营等)	Congress 国会(美国) Parliament 议会(英国) Government 政府 Brigade Headquarters 旅部
语言	English 英语 German 德语 Chinese 汉语 Japanese 日语 French 法语
杂志、报纸等	The New York Times 《纽约时报》 Life 《生活》 Language 《语言》 New Statesman 《新政治家》 Saturday Evening Post 《星期六晚邮报》
月份、星期、节假日等	January 一月 February 二月 Sunday 星期日 Monday 星期一 New Year's Day 新年 New Year's Eve 除夕 Christmas Day 圣诞节 Thanksgiving 感恩节 National Day 国庆节 Children's Day 儿童节

4. 零冠词表示类别(零冠词用于复数名词前时表示类别)

Dogs are faithful animals. 狗是忠实的动物。

Apples are cheap in this area. 这个地区苹果很便宜。

5. 零冠词用于学科名称前

mathematics 数学 chemistry 化学 astronomy 天文学 psychology 心理学

6. 零冠词用于表示年份四季等的名词前

Day was fading into dark. 白昼逐渐消失在黑暗中。 It was late afternoon before he reached home.傍晚时候他才到家。 If winter comes, can spring be far behind? 冬天到了,春天还会远吗?

7. 零冠词用于某些习语

in effect 事实上	by accident 偶然	in hospital 住院
by air 乘飞机	on duty 值班	on foot 步行
under way 在进行中	in advance 事先	out of question 毫无疑问

代词

代词的种类及 5 种基本代词的用法

1. 代词的种类

类别		举例	
主格 人称代词		I, you, he, she, it, we, you, they	
八州(四	宾格	me, you, him, her, it, us, you, them	
物主代词	形容词性物主代词	my, your, his, her, its, our, your, their	
初土10回	名词性物主代词	mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, yours, theirs	
	反身代词	myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves, oneself	
	相互代词	each other, one another	
	指示代词	this, that, these, those, such	
疑问代词		who, whom, whose, what, which	
关系代词		who, whom, whose, which, that, as, but	
	不定代词	some, any; somebody, someone, something; anybody, anyone, anything; everybody, everyone, everything; nobody, no one, nothing; many, few, a few; much, little, a little; all, both; each, either; none, neither; one; other, another	

2. 人称代词的用法

(1) 人称代词主格在句中作主语:

The light is bad here. I can't see clearly.

这儿的光线不好,我看不清。

She hesitated a moment, and then sat down beside me.

她犹豫了一会儿,然后在我身边坐下来。

We should keep calm even we are in danger.

即使在危急时刻我们也要保持冷静。

(2) 人称代词宾格在句中作宾语和表语:

There was nobody to tell him, to hint him, to give him at least a word of advice.

没有人告诉他,或暗示他,或起码给他一句忠告。(宾语)

Are you for it or against it? 你是赞成还是反对?(宾语)

Oh, it's you. 啊,是你呀。(表语)

If I were her, I would take the advice. 我要是她就接受这个建议。(表语)

在并列主语中,I总放在最后。如:

You and I 我和你 He and I 我和他 You, he and I 你我他

3. 物主代词的用法

(1) 形容词性物主代词在句中作定语

My computer has been updated. 我的电脑已经升级了。

She turned away her eyes. 她把目光移开。

Their ideals have changed. 他们的理想变了。

(2) 形容词性物主代词与 own 连用表强调

I saw it with my own eyes. 那是我亲眼所见。

Mind your own business. 不要管闲事。

(3) 名词性物主代词在句中作主语、宾语或表语

Hers is a pretty colorless life.

她的生活是一种相当平淡的生活。(主语)

This is your coat. Mine is in the room.

这是你的外衣。我的在房间里。(主语)

She would shut herself up in her room, Julio in his.

她常把自己关在房间里,朱利奥也是一样。(宾语)

My pen is broken. Please lend me yours.

我的钢笔坏了,请把你的借给我。(宾语)

-- Whose book is this? 这是谁的书?

—It's mine. 是我的。(表语)

I knew that the house was hers. 我知道那房子是她的。(表语)

4. 反身代词的用法

(1) 反身代词在句中作宾语、表语、同位语等

I want to build myself a country house.

我想给自己建一座乡间别墅。(宾语)

He is always thinking of himself. 他总是想着他自己。(宾语)

They quarreled among themselves. 他们之间发生了争吵。(宾语)

Bob is not quite himself today. 鲍勃今天感到不适。(表语)

Be yourself, please. 请自然一点。(表语)

The representatives of the strikers wanted to see the boss himself.

罢工工人的代表想要见老板本人。(同位语)

I fixed the windows myself. 我自己装的窗户。(同位语)

(2) 反身代词与某些动词连用表示某种特定意义

Help yourself to some fruit. 请吃点水果。

He shaves himself once a day. 他一天刮一次脸。

Why did you absent yourself from school yesterday?

你昨天为何没去上学?

- (3) 反身代词用于某些固定习语中:
- [1] by oneself 独自干;单干。

He said he wanted to go out to have a walk by himself.

他说他想独自出去散步。

I managed to do it by myself. 我是自己做成这件事的。

This is a machine that works by itself.

这是一台自动化的机器。

[2] for oneself 替自己; 为自己; 自己。

We'll have to judge for ourselves. 我们得自己来判断。

He demanded the right to decide for himself.

他要求得到自己做决定的权力。

[3] of oneself 自动地。

The enemy will not perish of himself. 敌人不会自行绝灭的。

[4] between ourselves 勿与外人道私下说的话。

All this is between ourselves. 这些都不能告诉别人。

Between ourselves, Mr. Black has gone abroad.

不要和外人讲,布莱克先生已出国了。

[5] among themselves之间。

They had a heated discussion among themselves.

他们之间进行了热烈的讨论。

[6] in oneself 本性;自身。

He is not bad in himself. 他本质不坏。

This is a good idea in itself. 这主意本身不错。

5. 相互代词的用法

(1) 相互代词在句中用作宾语

We did not know each other before. 我们以前互不认识。

They have been separated from one another for a long time.

他们分开很久了。

(2) 相互代词在句中作定语

They looked into each other's eyes for a silent moment.

他们彼此一时相对无言。

The two old men often call each other's nickname when they meet.

这两个老人见面时常常互相喊绰号。

(3) 补充

在汉语中有时没有"相互""彼此"的词,而译成英语时却要使用相互代词。如:

They don't often see each other now. 他们现在不常见面。

Do you often write to one another? 你们常通信吗?

They have known each other before. 他们以前就认识。

6. 指示代词的用法

(1) 指示代词 this, that, these, those 在句作主语、宾语、表语、定语、状语等

Are these your books? 这些是你的书吗?(主语)

This is my first visit to America. 这是我第一次到美国来。(主语)

Who's that speaking?请问是哪位?(打电话用语)(主语)

I will keep this in mind. 我会记住这一点的。(宾语)

You can choose one from these. 你可以从这些里面选一个。(宾语)

My idea is this. 这就是我的想法。(表语)

Oh, it's not that. 噢,问题不在那儿。(表语)

Do you know that man? 你认识那个人吗?(定语)

These flowers are very beautiful. 这些花非常漂亮。(定语)

He said he didn't want that much. 他说他不需要那么多。(状语)

The book is about this thick. 那本书大约有这么厚。 (状语)

(2) 指示代词 this 和 these 指时间与空间上较近的事物,that 和 those 指时间与空间上较远的事物

This building was built last year, that one was built many years ago. (表空间)

这栋大楼是去年建的,那栋是很多年前建的。

Those stars are too far away to be seen with naked eyes. (指空间)

那些星星离得太远,肉眼看不见。

During the whole of this time, Scrooge had acted like a man out of his wits. (表时间)

在整个这段时间,斯克鲁吉像是失魂落魄似的。

That stormy night, the witness was killed in the hospital. (表时间)

那个暴风雨之夜,证人在医院里被杀了。

(3) that 和 those 指代前面提到过的事物, this 和 these 指代随后要讲的事物

That view point is proved to be wrong, and this is what people are thinking correct now. (that 指前, this 指后)

那个观点被证明是错误的,下面才是人们认为正确的观点。

Those are the problems we should solve. (those 指前)

这些就是我们应该解决的问题。

Written on the placard are these words: we want peace. (these 指后)

牌子上写着这样一些字:我们要和平。

(4) those 作定语从句的先行词

Those who were present at the meeting were all celebrities.

出席会议的都是名流。

Those who are able to work were given jobs.

能工作的人都给分配了工作。

(5) 指示代词 such 在句中作主语、宾语、表语、定语等

Such is life. 生活就是这样。(主语)

Such often occurred in the past. 这种事情过去经常发生。(主语)

Take from the drawer such as you need.

从抽屉里拿你需要的东西吧。(宾语)

Just before Christmas they wanted help with trees and such.

正是在圣诞节前他们需要帮手来布置圣诞树之类的东西。(宾语)

The waves were such as I never saw before.

这样的海浪,我从未见过。(表语)

The foreign visitors said they had never seen such plants before.

外宾说他们以前从未见过这类植物。(定语)

(6) 补充

当名词后有限制性定语时,名词前不用 this 或 that 表示 "这个"或 "那个",要用 the。如:

May I have a look at the skirt you bought yesterday?

我能不能看一下你昨天买的裙子?

(skirt 后有定语从句 you bought yesterday, 其前要用 the。)

What do you think of the proposals put forward by Mr. Wang?

你觉得王先生提的建议怎么样?

(proposals 后有过去分词短语 put forward by Mr. Wang 作定语,其前要用 the)

疑问代词和关系代词

1. 疑问代词的用法

(1) who

[1] who 的意思是"谁",是主格,通常作主语。如:

Who is that woman? 那个妇女是谁?

Who are those people? 那些人是谁?

[2] who 在口语中可代替 whom 作宾语。如:

Who did you ask about it? 关于那件事你问过谁了?

(2) whom

whom 的意思是"谁",是宾格,在句中作宾语,常用于书面语中。如:

whom do you want to see? 你想见谁?

Whom do you talk about? 你们在谈论谁? (whom 作介词 about 的宾语)

(3) whose

[1] whose 的意思是"谁的",属格,具有名词和形容词的性质。如:

Whose book is this? 这是谁的书?(形容词性)

Whose is this book? 这书是谁的?(名词性)

[2] whose 可在句中作如下成分。

作主语。如: Whose is better? 谁的更好?

作表语。如: Whose are these pencils? 这些铅笔是谁的?

作宾语。如: Whose are you going to borrow? 你打算借谁的?

作定语。如: Whose umbrella is this? 这是谁的伞?

(4) what

[1] what 的意思是 "什么" ,具有名词和形容词的性质。如:

What are you doing? 你在做什么?(名词性)

What sport do you like best? 你最喜欢的运动是什么? (形容词性)

[2] what 可在句中作如下成分。

作主语。如: what's happening? 发生了什么事?

作表语。如: What is your mother? 你母亲是干什么工作的?

作宾语。如: What do you mean? 你是什么意思?

What did you talk to him about? 你和他说了什么? (介词宾语)

作定语。如: What color do you like? 你喜欢什么颜色?

(5) which

which 的意思是"哪个", which 在句中可作主语、表语、宾语、定语等成分。

作主语。如: This is my bag. Which is yours? 这是我的书包,哪个是你的?

作表语。如: Which is your favorite subject? 你最喜欢哪个科目?

I can't tell which is which because they are so alike.

我分辨不出谁是谁,因为他们太像了。

作宾语。如:Which do you like best?你最喜欢哪一个?

作定语。如:Which glasses do you want? 你想要哪些杯子?

Which platform does the London train leave? 去伦敦的火车从哪个站台开出?

(6) who, what 和 which 后可加 ever 来加强语气

Whatever are you thinking about? 你到底在想些什么?

Whoever are you looking for? 你到底在找谁?

Whichever do you prefer? 你究竟要哪个?

2. 关系代词 who, whom, whose, that, which 的用法

(1) 关系代词 who, whom, whose, that, which 的用法

英语中的关系代词有 who, whom, whose, that, which, 它们是用来引导定语从句的。关系代词既代表定语从句所修饰的词,又在其所引导的从句中承担一个成分,如主语、宾语、表语或定语。如:

This is the man who saved your son.

这就是救了你儿子的那个人。(who 在从句中作主语,先行词是 man)

The man whom I met yesterday is Jim .

我昨天见到的那个人是吉姆。(whom 在从句中作宾语,它的先行词是 man)

A child whose parents are dead is an orphan.

失去父母的孩子是孤儿。(whose 在从句中作定语,它的先行词是 child)

He wants a room whose window looks out over the sea.

他想要个窗户面临大海的房间。(whose 在从句中作定语,它的先行词是 room)

[1] who, whom 和 whose

who 和 whom 代表人,在从句中作主语时用 who ,作宾语时用 whom ,可省略。但若 whom 作介词宾语且介词放在其前时,不能省略;如介词位于句末时,可以省略。whose 代表某人的,在从句中作定语。如:

The man who insists upon seeing with perfect clearness before he decides, never decides.

坚持看清楚一切后才做决定的人永远也做不了决定。(who 作主语)

He is a man whom everybody respects.

他是一个人人都尊敬的人。(whom 作宾语,可以省略)

He is a man fromwhom we all should learn.

他是我们大家都应该学习的人。 (whom 作介词宾语且介词位于其前,不能省略)

(此句也可以是: He is a man (whom) we should all learn from.)

The people whose houses were damaged will be compensated.

房子被损坏了的人将给予补偿。

Who, whom 和 whose 可用于非限制性定语从句中,代表某人或某人的,此时不能用 that。如:

My sister, who is a nurse, came home for a few days.

我姐姐回家住了几天,她是个护士。

[2] which

which 代表物,在从句中可作主语或宾语,作宾语时可以省略,但作介词宾语且介词位于其前时不能省略。如:

The book which helps you most are those which make you think most.

最能使你获益的书是那些最能让你深思的书。(作主语)

This is a factor which we must not neglect.

这是一个我们绝不能忽略的因素。(作宾语,可省略)

Where is the book from which you quoted this sentence?

你引用这句话的那本书在哪儿?(作介词宾语且介词位于其前时,不能省略)

which 可用于非限制性定语从句中,代表物。如:

The book, which I bought second-hand, is made of oak.

我买的这张书桌是用橡木做的,它是二手货。

[3] that

that 可以代表事也可代表人,在从句中可以作主语或宾语,作宾语时可省略,但不能用于非限制性定语从句中。代表人时 who 比 that 用的

多些, 代表物时 that 比 which 用的多些。如:

The letter that came this morning is from my mother.

今天早晨收到的那封信是我母亲寄来的。(that 代表物,在从句中作主语)

Those students that failed the exam will have to take it again.

考试不及格的学生必须补考。(that 代表人,在从句中作主语)

Have you forgotten about the money (that) I lent you last week?

你忘了上星期我借给你钱的事了吗?(that 代表物,在从句中作宾语,可省略)

All the people (that) I invited have agreed to come.

所有我邀请了的人都同意来。(that 代表人,在从句中作宾语,可省略)

The hotel (that) we stayed at was both cheap and comfortable.

我们住的那家旅馆既便宜又舒服。(that 代表物,在从句中作介词宾语,可省略)

(2) 补充说明

下列情况下,定语从句的关系代词只能用that,不能用which或who

[1] 当先行词中有形容词的最高级时。如:

Shakespeare is the greatest poet that English has ever had.

莎士比亚是英国所拥有的最伟大的诗人。

Is this the best that you can do? 你最多只能做到这样吗?

[2] 当先行词为代词 all, anything, everything, little, much, nobody, nothing 时。如:

Anyone that wants to succeed must work hard . 任何想要获得成功的人必须努力工作。

[3] 当先行词中有含有 any, every, no, only, the first, the last, the same 时。如:

You are the only person that can help me. 你是唯一能帮助我的人。

Take the first chance that offers. 抓住出现的第一个机会。

(3) 没有先行词的关系代词

如果关系代词引导的从句不是作定语修饰先行词而是充当句子成分,这种关系代词就没有先行词,它只起连接作用。这种关系代词有:what, whatever, whoever, whichever, wherever 等。如:

What woke me up was a splashing noise.

把我吵醒的是一阵溅水的声音。(what 从句作主语)

I don't know what good they could have done.

我不知道他们能起什么好作用。(what 从句作宾语)

Whoever breaks the law is punished in the end.

违法者终将被惩罚。(whoever 引导的从句作主语)

不定代词的用法

1. some, any

(1) some 多用于肯定句,修饰复数可数名词和不可数名词,作"一些"解。它还可修饰单数可数名词,作"某一"解。如:

H-5 avian influenza first broke out in some Asian countries.

H-5 型禽流感首先在亚洲爆发。

Some people are early risers. 有些人起得很早。

(2) any 通常用于否定句、疑问句或条件句,修饰单数或复数可数名词以及不可数名词。

If there are any new magazines in the library, take some for me.

图书馆如果来了新杂志,替我借几本。

Are there any stamps in the drawer? 抽屉里有邮票吗?

Is there any money with you? 你身上带钱了吗?

(3) any 还可以用于肯定句,作"任何的"解。

You can come here any time. 你什么时候来都行。

You can get it at any shop. 你可以在任何一家商店买到它。

2. either, both, all

(1) either 表示 "两者中的任何一个"。

Either of the brothers is selfish. 两兄弟都非常自私。

Either will do. 两个都行。

(2) both "两个都",修饰可数名词,统指两者。

Tom and Jack both made some progress. 汤姆和杰克两个都有所进步。

Both of them should make concessions. 他们双方都应做出让步。

(3) all "全部,所有的",修饰可数名词和不可数名词,指两个以上的人或物。

All the students contributed to the fund.

所有的学生都为基金会捐了款。

All of the money has been spent. 钱都花完了。

We are all for you. 我们都支持你。

Say all you know and say it without reserve. 知无不言,言无不尽。

3. no, neither, none

(1) no "不" ,可修饰单数和复数可数名词以及不可数名词。

Time and tide wait for no man. 时不我待。

There are no clouds in the sky. 天上没有云。

I have no money for such things. 我没钱买这些东西。

(2) neither "两者中哪个都不" , 其所指范围是两个人或物。

Neither answer is correct. 两个答案都不对。

Neither of the two countries is satisfied with the result of the talk.

两个国家都不满意会谈的结果。

(3) none "没有一个人或东西",它既可指可数名词 (其所指范围是两个以上的人或物) ,又可指不可数名词。

All of the trees were cut down, and none was were. left.

所有的树都被砍了,一棵也不剩。

None of the students failed the examination.

没有一个学生考试不及格。

None of this money is his. 这笔钱没有一点儿是他的。

4. few, a few , little, a little

(1) few 的意思是"没有几个"; a few 的意思是"少数", "几个"; 修饰可数名词; a few 表示肯定意义, few 表示否定意义。 The problem is so difficult that few people can solve it.

这个问题太难了,几乎没人能做出来。

Only a few people can solve this problem. 只有几个人能解决这个问题。

Few of them want to go. 他们中几乎没有人想去。

A few of them want to go. 他们中有几个人想去。

(2) little "没有多少",a little "少量",修饰不可数名词;a little 表示肯定意义,little 表示否定意义。如:

There is little rainfall this spring. 今年春季雨水很少。

Although it did not rain for the whole month, there is a little water in the pond.

虽然整整一个月没下雨了,但池塘里还有一点水。

5. many, much, most

(1) many 用于修饰可数名词。

Many of the problems have been solved. 大部分问题已经解决了。

Many think that the situation will change soon. 很多人认为局势会很快改变。

(2) much 用于修饰不可数名词。

Much of the money has been spent. 这笔钱的大部分已经被花掉了。

They have finished much of the work. 他们已经完成了大部分的工作。

6. another, other, the other, others, the others

(1) another 指同类中多个东西中的 "另一个" (即 one more)。

This watch doesn't work, I must get another one.

这块表坏了,我该另买一块了。

He went back to work too soon , and was laid up for another three months.

他回去上班过早,结果又病倒三个月。

但要注意: other 与物主限定词连用也可指余下的另一个或全部。如:

Use your other hand. 用你的另一只手。

Mary is older than me but my other sisters are younger.

玛丽比我大,其余的都是我妹妹。

(2) other 单独使用时指其他的、另外的人或物。

There must be some other reason for him refusing to help.

他不予帮助一定另有原因。

I saw Tom with some other fellow students.

我看见汤姆和其他一些同学在一起。

(3) the otherone/ones.指同类中余下的另一个或另一些。

I'll have to use our duplicate key. I lost the other one.

我不得不用我们的备用钥匙了,我把那一把丢了。

Where are the other students? 其他学生去哪儿了?

One of the murderers was caught, but the other is still at large.

一个凶手被抓住了,另一个却依然逍遥法外。

(4) others 是 other 的复数形式,指其他的、另外的人或物。

We should not think only of our children, there are others to be cared for also.

我们不应该只想到自己的孩子,还有别的孩子也需要照顾。

Others may object to this plan. 别人可能会反对这个计划。

(5) the others 表示同类中余下的全部。

The search party was divided into two groups. Some went to the right, the others went to the left.

搜寻小组一分为二,一部分人向右,另一部分向左。

Jenny is cleverer than any of. the others in her class.

珍妮比班上的其他(任何)人都聪明。

7. 复合不定代词 someone somebody, something, anyoneanybody, anything, no onenobody, nothing, everyone everybody, everything

(1) someone, somebody 某人和 something 某物

Someone is asking to see you. 有人要见你。

Someone suggests putting off the meeting. 有人建议推迟会议。

There's something wrong with the machine. 机器出了毛病。

Something strange happened last night. 昨晚发生了件奇怪的事。

(2) anyone, anybody 任何人和 anything 任何事情

Anybody can do this work. It's very simple.

这事太简单了,人人都能做。

Did you meet anyone on your way home? 你回家的路上碰到什么人了吗?

He faltered: "Is anything wrong?" 他支支唔唔地说: "有什么错吗?"

He did not say anything after that. 这以后他再也没说什么。

(3) no one, nobody 没有人.和 nothing (没有东西)。

I'm not somebody. I'm nobody. 我不是重要人物,我是个无名小卒。

No one wants to do that. 没人愿做那种事。

Nobody is absent. 没有人缺席。

That's nothing. 那没有什么。

He said he knew nothing about it. 他说他对那事一无所知。

(4) everyone, everybody (每个人)和 everything (每样东西,一切事物)。

She said good-bye to everyone. 她和每个人告别。

Everybody's business is nobody's business. 事关大家无人管。

Everything is ready for the experiment. 实验的一切都准备好了。

This news means everything to us. 这个消息对我们至关重要。

数词

数词的种类

类别		例词
数词	基数词	one , twenty , hundred , thousand , million,three hundred and sixty-seven(367) thirty-seven thousand six hundred and

	fifty-five(37 , 655)
序数词	irst , seventieth , hundredth , fifty-seventh four thousand six hundred eighty-eighth (第 4 , 688)
分数	3/5 (three fifths) 5/11(five elevenths) (two and four ninths)
小数	12.54(twelve point five four) 0.332(zero point three three two) 0.05(zero point zero five)

基数词和序数词的用法

1. 基数词的用法

(1) 作定语。如:

There are only three boys in the class. 班上只有 3 名男生。

Ten people will come to the party. 十个人要来参加聚会。

(2) 作主语。如:

It is said that thirteen is an unlucky number. 据说 13 是个不吉利的数字。

Three of them will play football. 他们中有三人要去踢足球。

(3) 作宾语。如:

It is worth three hundred. 这件东西值 300。

The city has a population of three million. 这个城市有三百万人口。

(4) 作表语。如:

I am eighteen. 我 18 岁。

Two and two is four. 二加二等于四。

(5) 作同位语。如:

Are you two coming? 你们俩来吗?

They ten will go abroad. 他们十个人将出国。

2. 序数词表示法

(1) 有时序数词前面可加不定冠词来表示"再一","又一"这样的意思。如:

We'll have to do it again. 我们得重做一次。

Shall I ask him a third time? 还要再问他一次吗?

When Nash sat down, a fourth man rose to speak.

纳什坐下后,第四个人又起来发言。

(2) 序数词的主要作用

作主语。如:

The first day of May is International Labour Day . 五月一日是国际劳动节。

作表语。作表语时,序数词前的定冠词往往省去。如:

Lynd was second last year. 林德去年是第二。

作宾语。如:

He was among the forst to arrive. 他是首批到达的人员之一。

作定语。如:

May is the fifth month of the year. 五月是一年中的第五个月。

作同位语。如:

Who is the woman, the second in the second line? 在第二列第二个的那个妇女是谁?

但要注意:在很多情况下,我们可以用基数词代替序数词来表示顺序。如:

the second part = Part two (第二部分)

the first chapter = Chapter one (第一章)

the fourth section = Section four (第四节)

小数、分数、百分数和运算符号

1. 小数表示法

(1) 小数的读法

小数点左边的数通常按基数词读,若为三位以上的数,也可按编码式读法读出,即将数字单个读出;小数点右边的数通常按编码式读法单个读出。如:

6.86 six point eight six

14.15 fourteen point one five

345.456 three four five point four five six

或 three hundred and forty - five point four five six

(2) 小数中 "0" 的读法

"0" 在小数中通常读作 nought (英)或 zero (美), 也可读作字母 o。如:

0.08 (nought) point nought eight 或 (zero) point zero eight

9.07 nine point o seven

2. 百分数表示法

百分数中的百分号%读作 percent。如:

6% 读作 six percent

0.6% 读作 (nought) point six percent

500% 读作 five hundred percent

3. 倍数表示法

倍数表示方法很多,如:

This room is four times as big as mine. 这个房间是我房间的四倍。

This room is three times larger than that one. 这个房间比那个房间大两倍。

The output of coal has doubled. 煤的产量增加了一倍。

My aunt is as old again as I am. 我姑姑年龄比我大一倍。

Productivity is increased three fold. 生产效率提高了两倍。

The volume of the Sun is about 1,300,000 times that of the Earth.

太阳的体积约为地球的1300000倍。

4. 加减乘除式的读法

6+5=11	Six plus five is eleven 或 Six and five is eleven.	
11-6 = 5	Eleven minus six is five. 或 Six from eleven is five.	
4×5 = 20	Four multiplied by five is twenty.或 Four times five is twenty.	
20÷4=5	Twenty divided by four is five. 或 Four into twenty goes five.	
15:5 = 3	The ratio of fifteen to five is three.	
3 ²	Three squared is nine.	
23	Two cubed is eight.	
24	The fourth power of two is sixteen.	
X^(1/2)=Y	The square root of X is Y.	
X^(1/3)=Y	The cubic root of X is Y.	
a > b	a is more than b.	
a < b	a is less than b.	
a ≈ b	a approximately equals to b.	
a ≠ b	a is not equal to b.	

5. 分数表示法

(1) 较小分数的一般读写方法。如:

1/3 one-third	2/3 two-thirds	3/5 three-fifths

(2) 较复杂分数的简明读写方法。如

22/9 twenty-two over nine a/b a over b 或 a divided by b 43/97 forty-three over ninety-seven

(3) 整数与分数之间须用 and 连接。如:

four and a half nine and two fifths

(4) 分数用作前置定语时,分母要用单数形式。注意下列写法与读法。如:

a one-third mile 1/3 英里 a three-quarter majority 3/4 的多数

时间、货币和编码

1. 时刻表示法

(1) 二十四小时计时法

二十四小时计时法通常采用"小时数:分钟数"、"小时数.分钟数"或"小时数分钟数"的形式,如:

01:00	凌晨一点	(ou) one hour 或 one o'clock
01:20	凌晨一点二十分	(ou) one twenty 或 twenty past one
02:00	凌晨两点	(ou)two hours 或 two o'clock
02:10	凌晨两点十分	(ou) two ten 或 ten past two
3:05	凌晨三点五分	(ou) three(ou) five 或 five past three
09:45	上午九点四十五	(ou) nine forty - five 或 a quarter to ten
10:15	上午十点一刻	ten fifteen 或 a quarter past ten
12:00	中午十二点	twelve hours 或 midday 或 noon
12:45	中午十二点四十五	twelve forty - five 或 a quarter to thirteen
13:00	下午一点	thirteen hours
15:30	下午三点半	fifteen thirty 或 half past fifteen
21:15	晚上九点一刻	twenty one fifteen
23:00	晚上十一点	twenty-three hours
23:05		
25.05	晚上十一点零五分	twenty-three(ou)five
23:45	晚上十一点零五分 晚上十一点四十五分	twenty-three(ou)five twenty-three forty-five
		•
23:45	晚上十一点四十五分	twenty-three forty-five

(2) 十二小时计时法

十二小时计时法通常采用"小时数:分钟数"或"小时数.分钟数"的形式,如:8:12 或 8.12。为了避免误解,通常加上 in the morning / a.m. (上午) 或 in the afternoon p.m. (下午) 以示区别。a.m.是拉丁语 ante meridiem 的缩写形式,读作/'ei'em /,意思是"上午",p.m.是拉丁语 post meridiem 的缩写形式,意思是"下午;晚上",读作/'pi:'em/。若表示整点钟,可加 o'clock,也可不加。如:

8.00 a.m./8:00 a.m. 上午八点

读作: eight a.m. 或 eight in the morning.

8.45 a.m./8:45 a.m. 上午八点四十五

读作: eight forty-five a.m. 或 a quarter to nine in the morning.

2.00 p.m./2:00 p.m. 下午两点

读作: two(o'clock) p.m. 或 two (o'clock) in the afternoon.

3.30 p.m./3:30 p.m. 下午三点半

读作: three thirty p/m. 或 half past three in the afternoon

5.15 p.m./5:15 p.m. 下午五点一刻

读作: five fifteen p.m. 或 a quarter past five in the afternoon.

8.55 p.m./8:55 p.m. 晚上八点五十五

读作: eight fifty-five at night 或 five to nine at night (at night 指日落后到半夜零时。)

2. 年月日表示法

(1) 在表示年、月、日时 , "年" 用基数词 , "日" 用序数词。如:

June 8, 1946 或 June eighth 1946: 1946年6月8日

year two thousand: 2000年

1950's 或 nineteen fifties: 20世纪 50 年代 250 B.C. 或 two fifty B.C: 公元前 250 年 240 A.D. 或 two forty A.D: 公元后 240 年

(2) 表示 "年" 和 "月" 时,在 "年" 和 "月" 前用介词 in;表示具体日期时,在 "日" 前用介词 on.如:

in 2003:在2003年 in July:在七月

on June 24, 1998:在1998年6月24日

3. 英美货币单位表示法

(1) 英镑的符号 "£" 放在数字前面,但单位词 "pound(s)" 放在数字后面。

£ 50 读作: fifty pounds 50 英镑

(2) 便士可用 "P" 表示,单数为 penny,复数为 pence,放在数字后面。

1P 读作: one penny 1便士 5P 读作: five pence 5便士

£ 54.36 读作: five-four pounds thirty-six pence 54 英镑 36 便士 They imported nine thousand pounds worth(or value)of tea.

他们进口了价值九干英镑的茶叶。

(3) 美元的符号 "\$" 放在数字前面,但单词 "dollars" 放在数字后面。

\$2.25 读作: two dollars twenty-five cents 2 美元 25 美分 \$563 读作: five hundred sixty-three dollars 563 美元 I got the coat for 90 cents. 我花了 90 美分买了这件衣服。

在借据、文书、帐单等重要文件中,钱数多以英语和阿拉伯数字两种形式写出。如: I owe you (IOU) two thousand dollars (\$2, 000). 今借到两干美元(\$2, 000)。

4. 数字的编码式读法

编码式读法指将数字逐一按基数词读出的方法。通常门牌号码、房间号码、电话号码、邮政编码、车牌号码及其他专用编码都采用编码式读法。凡采用编码式读法的数字都应在三位以上,两位数字通常按基数词读,如:

Room 34	34号房间	读作: room thirty-four
extension 2258	2258 号分机	读作: double two five eight
page 518	第 518 页	读作: page five one eight

动词的时态

动词的时态

时间	一般时态	进行时态	完成时态	完成进行时态
现在	work works 一般现在时	am is working are 现在进行时	has have worked 现在完成时	has have been working 现在完成进行时
过去	worked 一般过去时	was were working 过去进行时	had worked 过去完成时	had been working 过去完成进行时
将来	shall will work 一般将来时	shall will be working 将来进行时	shall will have worked 将来完成时	shall will have been working 将来完成进行时
过去将来	should	should	should	should

	would work	would be working	would have worked	would have been working
	一般过去将来时	过去将来进行时	过去将来完成时	过去将来完成进行时

动词的现在时

1. 一般现在时

(1) 一般现在时表示经常性的动作或状态

一般现在时表示经常性动作或状态时, 常与 often, always, usually, sometimes, every day 等时间状语连用。如:

The shop opens at nine every day. 这家商店每天九点开门。

It seldom snows here. 这儿很少下雪。

(2) 一般现在时表示客观存在或普遍真理

Light travels faster than sound. 光速比声速快。

Food easily goes bad in hot weather. 天气热时食物容易坏。

(3) 一般现在时表示主语的特征或状态

The picture looks very beautiful. 这幅画看起来很美。

Air contains oxygen and nitrogen. 空气含有氧和氮。

(4) 一般现在时在时间和条件状语从句中表示将来的动作或状态

I'll tell her about it as soon as I see her.

When does the train arrive? 火车几点到?

(5) 用于图片说明或剧本中的动作提示和背景说明

INSIDE THE SHELTER: Stockton slowly turns to face his wife. The angry screaming cries of the people ring in their ears even as they depart.

防空洞中:斯道克顿慢慢转过身,面对他的妻子。那群人正在离去,而他们愤怒的尖叫声却还回响在他们的耳边。

(6) 电视节目直播解说

It's Carter to serve- he needs just one more point. He serves. And Smith misses. What a great serve! So the championshipgoes to 19-year-old Harry Carter.

该卡特发球了,他只需再得一分就赢了。他发球了,史密斯接球失误。多漂亮的发球!冠军属于了19岁的哈利-卡特。

2. 现在进行时

(1) 现在进行时表示说话时或现阶段正在进行的动作

表示现阶段正在进行的动作,通常有表示现阶段的时间状语,如:today, this week, this month, this year, this term,now 等。如: He is writing a novel now. 他目前正在写一部小说。

(2) 现在进行时表示经常性的动作

现在进行时在表示经常性、重复性或习惯性的动作时必须与 only, merely, simply, really,fast, rapidly, steadily, forever, all the time, always, constantly, continually, repeatedly 等频度副词连用。如:

She is always complaining. 她总是在抱怨。

(3) 现在进行时表示按计划或已安排好要做的事

这一用法只适用于某些动词,如:go,come,leave,start,arrive,return,spend,sail,meet,fly等。如:

The guest is leaving by train tonight. 客人今晚坐火车走。

(4) 补充说明

[1] 在不少情况下,表示正在进行的动作的汉语句子,并没有"正在"这样的字眼,但在译为英语时必须用进行时态。如:

It's raining heavily. 下大雨了。

How is everything going? 事情进展如何?

[2] 有些动词通常不能用进行时。不能用进行时的动词有:

表示感觉或感情的词, 如: hear, see, smell, taste, feel, seem, notice, hate, love, like, want, wish, refuse, prefer, forgive 等。

表示存在或所属的词,如: exist, stay, remain, obtain, have, own, form, contain等。

表示认识或理解的词,如:understand, know, remember, forget, believe, think, doubt等。

3. 现在完成时

(1) 现在完成时表示从过去持续到现在的动作或状态

现在完成时的这种用法通常与由 since 或 for 引导的时间状语连用。如:

The old man have lived here for more than twenty years.

老人已在此住了20多年了。

(2) 现在完成时表示过去发生的对现在有影响的动作

[1] 现在完成时的这种用法有时不带时间状语,有时可以和 already, before, ever, just, lately, never, once, recently, yet 等一些所指时间不具体的时间状语连用。如:

Have you ever been to Australia? 你去过澳大利亚吗?

[2] 有时现在完成时和 now, today, this morning, this week, this year 等表示现在的时间状语连用。如:

I haven't seen him today. 我今天没见过他。

I have seen him only once this year. 我今年只见过他一次。

(3) 现在完成时在时间和条件状语从句中表示将来完成的动作

I'll go to the party as soon as (or when) I have finished my homework.

我完成作业后就去参加聚会。

(4) 现在完成时和 until now, so far, in the past few years, up to the present 等表示从某时到目前这段时间的状语连用 I have not heard from her so far. 到目前为止,我没有收到过她的信。

We have learned five hundred words up to the present.

到目前为止,我们已学了五百个生词。

但要注意: 当意义明确时, 适用现在完成时的句子可以不用时间状语。如:

He has done a lot of work. 他干了许多工作。

She has told me about her story. 她跟我讲过她的故事。

4. 现在完成进行时

(1) 现在完成进行时表示从过去一直持续到现在的动作或刚刚结束的动作

I've been writing letters all this morning.

我写了一上午信。(动作不再继续)

O'Neil is ill. He's been lying in the bed for three weeks.

奥尼尔在病中,已卧床3个星期了。(动作会继续下去)

(2) 现在完成进行时表示从过去到现在的重复性动作

现在完成进行时的这种用法所表示的并不是一直在进行的动作,而是断断续续地反复发生的动作。如:

What have you been doing all this time?

你一直都在干什么来着?(动作可能继续下去)

That reporter has been contributing articles to this magazine all these years.

这些年那个记者一直为这家杂志撰稿。(断断续续地反复发生的动作

动词的过去时

1. 一般过去时

- (1) 一般过去时表示过去的动作或状态
- [1] 一般过去时通常与表示过去的时间状语连用。

与一般过去时连用的时间状语有: yesterday, last night(week, year, month, Sunday),then, at that time, at that moment, just now, a few days(weeks, months, years) ago 等。例句:

Lucy turned off all the lights before she went out.

出门前露茜关了所有的灯。

[2] 一般过去时也可以与 today, this week(month, year)等时间状语连用,但这些时间状语应指过去。如:

Did you see him today? 你今天见他了吗?(today 指今天已过去的某一时刻)

[3] 一般过去时还可以和 for 或 since 引导的时间状语连用。如:

I stayed there for two months. 我在那里呆了两个月。

Nothing happened since then. 打那以后什么事都没有发生。

(2) 有时一般过去时的时间状语或是在上下文、或是暗含于句中

Who was that? 那人是谁?

I saw Ker in town. 我在城里看见了克尔。

(3) 一般过去时在时间和条件状语从句中表示过去将来的动作或状态。

Hans said he would let us know if he got any news.

汉斯说要是得到消息就告诉我们。

2. 过去进行时

- (1) 过去进行时表示过去某时正在进行的动作
- [1] 过去进行时通常和时间状语连用。如:

We were having dinner when they came.

他们来的时候,我们正在吃饭。

[2] 过去进行时表示过去某段时间内持续的动作。如:

Carlos was staying at home all last week.

上周整整一周卡洛斯都在家呆着。

They were building a dam last spring. 去年春天他们一直在修一个水坝。

[3] 过去进行时表示与过去某个动作同时发生的动作。如:

I was reading while she was writing. 我在读书,她在写字。

[4] 有时过去进行时用于主句,位于其后的 when 引导的从句表示意外发生的情况:

I was walking in the street when it began to rain.

我正在街上走着,突然下起了雨。

(2) 过去进行时表示过去将来的动作

过去进行时的这种用法多表示过去的打算,通常仅限于 come, go, leave, depart, start 等一些表示移动的动词。如:

He didn't know whether she was coming. 他不知道她是否会来。

The delegation was departing three days later. 代表团打算三天后动身。

3. 过去完成时

(1) 过去完成时表示过去某时之前结束的动作或状态

When he got there, the train had already left.

他到了那儿时火车已经离开了。

Ina realized she had made a mistake.

艾娜意识到她犯了个错误。

(2) 过去完成时与 when 等从句连用

had+just / barely / hardly / scarcely+done...when..., no sooner...than... 是表示"刚......就……"或"不等……就……"的固定句型。如:

No sooner had we left the house than it began to rain.

我们刚离开家就开始下雨了。

I had not gone much farther before I caught them up.

我没有走多远就赶上他们了。

(3) 过去完成时表示持续到过去某时之前的动作或状态

We had finished the work by nine o'clock yesterday.

昨晚九点前我们已完成了工作。

The company had completed the project by the end of 1999.

到 1999 年底公司已完成了那个项目。

(4) 过去完成时表示未实现的愿望

过去完成时表示未实现的愿望的用法仅限于 expect, hope, intend, mean, plan, think,want 等动词, 过去时间往往由一般过去时表达。如:

I had intended to speak, but time did not permit.

我本想发言,可是时间不允许。

I had hoped you might know. 我本希望你会知道的。

4. 过去完成进行时

过去完成时主要表示持续到过去某时之前的动作。如:

I had been looking for it for days before I found it.

这个东西,我找了好多天才找着。

The telephone had been ringing for three minutes before it was answered.

电话铃响了三分钟才有人接。

He was tired. He'd been working all day.他累了。他工作了一整天。

After he'd been lecturing for half an hour, Professor Brown had a drink of water.

布朗教授讲了半小时课之后,他喝了一点水。

动词的将来时

1. 一般将来时

- (1) 基本用法
- [1] 一般将来时常用来表示将来时间的动作或状况。如:

Helena will be twenty next year. 海伦娜明年就二十岁了。

- [2] 一般将来时用于真实条件句和时间状语从句的主句中表示将来的情况。如:
- I'll tell you as soon as he comes. 他一来我就告诉你。
- [3] 用于条件状语从句表示愿望或意愿。如:

If you will wait for me, I shall come back soon.

如果你愿意等我,我马上就回来。

[4] 一般将来时可用来表示一种倾向或习惯性动作。如:

The shop won't open until nine. 这家商店九点才会开门。

Children will be children. 孩子就是孩子。

(2) be going to +动词原形

这一结构表示打算或准备好要做的事或有迹象表明要发生的天气变化等情况。如:

What are you going to do during the summer holiday? 你暑假打算做什么? The train is going to arrive. 火车就要到了。

(3) 现在进行时 (be + 现在分词)

有些动词的现在进行时可以表示将要发生的动作,表示按计划或安排即将发生的事。这类动词有:go, come, leave, start, arrive, return, spend, sail, meet, fly 等。如:

Annie is coming to supper this evening. 安妮今晚要来吃饭。

(4) be to +动词原形

这一结构可表示约定、命令或按计划要做的事。如:

When are they to come? 他们什么时候来?

We are to meet at the school gate. 我们约好在校门口见。

(5) be about to +动词原形

这一结构表示"即将做"或"马上做"的意思。如:

He is about to leave. 他马上就要动身。

The vacation is about to start. 假期即将开始。

2. 将来进行时

将来进行时表示将来某一时间正在进行的动作。常表示已安排好之事,给人一种期待感。如:

What will you be doing this time tomorrow?

明天这个时候你将做什么?

The train will be leaving in a second. 火车马上就开。

3. 将来完成时

- (1) 将来完成时表示在将来某一时间之前完成的动作,往往对将来某一时间产生影响。如:
- I shall have finished reading the book by the end of this week.

我将在本周末前读完这本书。

Before long,he will have forgotten all about the matter.

过不久,他很快就会把这件事全然忘记。

(2) 将来完成时表示持续到将来某时的动作或状态。如:

By the time he graduates, he will have studied French for four years.

到他毕业的时候,他学法语就满四年了。

By the time Pierce comes back from the meeting, we will have waited here for three hours.

到皮尔斯开会回来的时候,我们已经在这儿等了三个钟头了。

4. 过去将来时

(1) 过去将来时表示过去某时之后将出现的情况,通常用于宾语从句中。如:

I thought he would come. 我以为他会来。

Jenny never imagined that she would become a doctor.

詹妮从没想到自己会当医生。

(2) 表示从过去某时看将要发生的事情。如:

The old lady was fifty-eight then. In two years she would be sixty.

老太太当时五十八岁,再过两年就六十了。

I didn't think they would have any objection to it.

我想他们不会有什么反对意见。

(3) 表示过去习惯性动作(不管什么人称都用 would)。如:

Whenever he had time, Harris would go to see his grandmother.

哈里斯一有时间就去看他奶奶。

Joanna would go for a walk after she had supper.

乔安娜吃完晚饭总要去散步。

被动语态

被动语态

	一般现在时	am/is/are made
现在范畴	现在进行时	am / is /are being made
	现在完成时	has/have been made
	一般过去时	was/were made
过去范畴	过去进行时	was/werebeingmade
	过去完成时	had been made
	一般将来时	shall/will be made
将来范畴	将来完成时	shall/will have been made
	过去将来时	should/would be made
	过去将来完成时	should/would have been made

1. 被动语态的各种时态

被动语态(The Passive Voice)是动词的一种形式,表示主语是谓语动词的承受者。被动语态便于论述客观事实,故常用于科技文章、新闻报道、书刊介绍以及景物描写。被动语态没有将来进行时、过去将来进行时和完成进行时形式。

(1) 一般现在时的被动语态

I am not so easily deceived. 我不会轻易上当受骗的。

Computers are widely used in the world.

计算机在世界范围内得到广泛应用。

(2) 一般过去时的被动语态

The car was seriously damaged. 汽车受到严重损坏。

Printing was introduced into Europe from China.

印刷术是由中国传入欧洲的。

(3) 现在进行时的被动语态

The question is being discussed at the meeting.

这个问题现在正在会上讨论。

The children are being taken care of by their aunt.

孩子们现在正由其姑妈照看。

(4) 过去进行时的被动语态

When I called, tea was being served.

当我来访时,正值上茶之际。

When they arrived, the experiments were being made.

他们到达时,实验正在进行。

(5) 现在完成时的被动语态

The meeting has been put off. 会议已被推迟了。

The party has been planned since the new year.

这次聚会自新年起就已筹划了。

(6) 过去完成时的被动语态

By the end of last month, he had been robbed at least three times.

到上月底,他已被抢了至少三次。

(7) 将来完成时的被动语态

It is said that the building will have been completed before September.

据说大楼将于九月前竣工。

This class will have been taught by Mr Brown for two years by next summer.

到明年夏天,布朗先生在这两个班执教已有两年了。

2. 含有情态动词的被动语态

Water mustn't be wasted. 绝不能浪费水。

Electric energy can be changed into light enery.

电能可以转变成光能。

Cross the road very carefully. Look both ways, or you might be knocked down.

过马路时要特别小心,要往两边看,不然会被撞倒。

3. Get+过去分词构成的被动语态

Get+过去分词也可以构成被动语态,用这种结构的句子侧重于动作的结果而不是动作本身。如:

the man got hurt on his way home. 那个男人在回家的路上受伤了。

Mary is going to get married. 玛丽准备结婚了。

How did the glass get broken? 杯子怎么破了?

4. 短语动词的被动语态

(1) 动词+介词

This matter has been talked about recently.

这件事近来一直被谈论着。

Such a thing has never been heard of before.

这样的事从未被听说过。

The old man was looked after carefully. 那位老人被精心照顾着。

He has never been listened to. 人家从不听他的话。

(2) 动词+副词

The sports meeting was put off. 运动会被推迟了。

A short play will be put on by them at the party.

一个短剧将要由他们在晚会上演出。

What he said must be thought over. 他说的话必须仔细思考。

(3) 其他短语动词

Privileges must be done away with. 特权必须被取消。

The light has just been turned off. 灯刚被关上。

Their plans are being carried out. 他们的计划正在执行中。

5. "主+动+宾+宾补" 句型变为被动结构

这种句型有两个宾语,一般地说一为间接宾语,一为直接宾语。变为被动结构时,只将主动结构中的一个宾语变为被动结构中的主语,另一 宾语不变

We call him Xiao Wang. 我们叫他小王。(主动句)

He was called Xiao Wang. 他被叫做小王。(被动句)

He painted the table green. 他把桌子漆成了绿色。 (主动句)

The table was painted green. 桌子被漆成了绿色。(被动句)

6. "主+动+that 从句"句型的被动句

有些以 that 从句作宾语的主动句可以转换成两种形式的被动句。如:

People say that he is the richest man in the city.

人们说他是全市头号富翁。

 $\rightarrow\!\text{It}$ is said that he is the richest man in the city.

据说他是全市头号富翁。

 \rightarrow He is said to be the richest man in the city.

据说他是全市头号富翁。

当说话人认为主动句的主语无关紧要,或者不清楚谁是谓语动作的发出者时,便常常使用上述形式的被动句。如:

It was reported that the boy had been found.

据报道,男孩已被找到。

The boy was reported to have been found.

据报道, 男孩已被找到。

常用于上述被动句型的动词有: acknowledge, assume, believe, claim, consider, declare, estimate, expect, find, know, presume, report, say, think 等。

7. 含有被动意义的主动语态

英语中有一些表示被动意义的主动句,其谓语所表示的不是主语的动作,而是其内在的性能。这种句子的特点是:主语为无生命名词,谓语动词为一般现在时;肯定句必须带方式状语;否定句的谓语可以带情态动词。如:

She is to blame. 她应该受到责备。

The house is to rent. 这个房子要出租。

Food can keep fresh in a fridge. 食物放在冰箱里能保鲜。

The pen writes smoothly. 这支钢笔很好写。

The cloth feels soft. 这布摸上去很柔软。

The cake tastes good. 这蛋糕很好吃。

助动词与情态动词

助动词 be、have 和 do

1. Be 动词的用法

(1) 助动词 be 和现在分词一起构成进行时或完成进行时。如:

He is reading. 他在读书。

I'll be waiting for you there then. 我到时在那儿等你。

(2) 助动词 be 和过去分词一起构成被动语态。如:

Is he taken good care of? 他被照顾得好吗?

They shall be punished. 他们一定要受惩罚的。

(3) 助动词 be 用作系动词。如:

Matthew is a teacher. 马修是个老师。

We were late today. 我们今天迟到了。

(4) 助动词 be 和不定式连用,可以表示下面几种情况。

表计划,只用于肯定句和疑问句。如:

We are to discuss it the following week.

我们打算下周讨论那件事。

When is the wedding to be? 婚礼什么时候举行?

表命令,只用于肯定句和否定句。如:

All junior officers are to report to the colonel at once.

全体下级军官都必须立即向上校报到。

Tom says I am to leave you alone. 汤姆要我不理会你。

表可能,多用于被动结构。如:

Her father was often to be seen in the bar of this hotel.

在这家旅馆的酒吧经常可见到她父亲。

Where is he to be found? 在哪儿可找到他?

表示"必须","应该"多用于现在式。如:

Nobody is to leave this room. 谁也不许离开这个房间。

What am I to do next?下一步我该做什么?

He's to blame. 该怪他。

表注定,多用于过去式。如:

He was to be my teacher and friend for many years to come.

在后来许多年里,他是我的老师和朋友。

The professor did not know at the time that he was never to see his native place again.

当时教授不知道他再也见不到他的故土了。

(5) 助动词 be 用于条件从句。如:

If we are to succeed, we must redouble our efforts.

我们要想成功,必须加倍努力才行。(are to 意为"想要")

(6) be 后接 going to, about to, on the point of 等表示将来时间或根据计划、意图等将要发生的事。如:

It's going to rain. 快要下雨了。(将来时间)

He's about to leave. 他正要走。(将来时间)

2. Have 的用法

(1) 助动词 have 与过去分词一起构成各种完成时态。如:

I have read the book. 我读过这本书。

Kenny has left. 肯尼已经走了。

(2) 助动词 have 与 been+现在分词构成各种完成进行时态。如:

I have been washing the clothes the whole morning.

整个上午我都在洗衣服。

Lambert has been working as a worker here for nearly five years.

兰伯特一直在这里当工人,几乎有五年了。

(3) 助动词 have 构成 had better, had best, had rather 等词组。

Had better 和 had best 是"最好还是……"或"还是……好"的意思。在 had better 中,had 不表示过去时间,不能用 have 或 has 代替。had better 后可接不带 to 的不定式或接进行式、完成式或被动语态。had better 的否定式是 had better not。如:

You had better stay at home. 你最好呆在家里。

You'd better have had that experience before.

假如你以前有过那个经验就好了。

You'd better not run the risk. 你最好不要冒那个险。

(4) 补充

Have 还可用作使役动词和实义动词(表示"有","吃"等意义)。如:

They have had the problem solved.

他们让其他人解决了这个问题.(使役动词)

Bad news has wings. 丑事传千里. (实义动词)

What shall we have for lunch? 我们午饭吃甚么? (实义动词)

3. Do 的用法

(1) 助动词 do, does 和 did 用于构成否定句、疑问句和倒装句。如:

Do you understand all this? 你明白这一切吗?

Don't go yet. 先别走。

(2) 助动词 do, does 和 did 用于代替句中的主要动词,以避免重复。如:

He didn't go to the party. Neither did I. 他没有去参加晚会,我也没有去。

I do not agree. Nor does he. 我不同意, 他也不同意。

(3) 用于加强语气 ,do ,does 和 did 位于陈述句的动词原形前 ,do 位于祈使句中的动词原形前。如:

Do have another cup of coffee before you go.

走前请一定再喝一杯咖啡。

That's exactly what he did say. 他就是那样说的。

But I do want to go. 可是我确实想去。

(4) 在一些以否定副词如 never, rarely, scarcely, only 等为首的句子中,如果实义动词是现在时或过去时,助动词 do 和 did 可以构成主谓倒装。如:

Never did I tell him about that. 我从来没有告诉过他那件事。

Rarely does it snow in the South. 南方很少下雪。

情态动词 can、may、must 的用法

1. can 的用法

(1) can 表示主语的能力。如:

The hall can seat 1,000 people. 这个大厅能坐 1 000 人。

Can you play the piano? 你会弹钢琴吗?

(2) can 表示说话人的猜测(即可能性),多用于否定句和疑问句。如:

Can it be true? 这能是真的吗?

The moon can't always be at the full. 月不可能总是圆的。

What can she mean? 她可能是什么意思呢?

(3) can 表示许可。如:

This sort of thing can't go on. 这样的事不能再继续下去了。

You can't smoke here. 你不可在这里吸烟。

(4) "can+完成式"表示说话人对过去情况的猜测(只用于否定和疑问结构中)。如:

He can't have missed the way. I explained the route carefully and drew him a map.

他不会迷路。我对他详细说明了路线,还画了一张地图。

Can the team have left already? 球队已经离开了吗?

2. could 的用法

(1) could 表示主语的能力,为 can 的过去时形式,如:

Daisy couldn't come yesterday because she was ill.

戴西昨天不能来是因为她病了。

They said they could swim. 他们说他们会游泳。

(2) could 表示说话人的猜测(即可能性)。如:

He could be right. 他或许是对的。

Could it be Henry? 可能是亨利吗?

At that time we thought the story could not be true.

那时我们认为所说的事不可能是真的。

(3) could 表示许可。如:

Father said I could swim in the river.

爸爸说我可以在河里游泳。

Could I help you? 我能帮忙吗? (比 Can I help you?婉转)

The man asked if he could smoke in the hall.

那个人问可不可以在大厅里吸烟。

(4) "could+完成式"用于肯定句时一般表示过去可能完成却未完成的动作。如:

I could have reported you. 我本可以报告你的。

You could have let me know earlier. 你本来该早一些告诉我。

3. may 的用法

(1) may 表示许可,多用于肯定句和疑问句中,否定句中不常用。如:

May I ask you a question?

我可以问你个问题吗?(比 Can I ask you a question?更礼貌)

You may keep the book for two weeks.

这本书你可以借两周。

(2) may 表示可能性,常用于肯定句和否定句中,指现在或将来的可能性。如:

It may be true. 那可能是真的。

The road may be blocked. 这条路可能不通了。

(3) "may+完成式"表示说话人对过去情况的猜测。如:

Eva may have missed her train. 伊娃可能误火车了。

He may have read the book. 他可能读过这本书。

(4) may as well(=might as well)是一个习语,作"不妨"或"完全有理由"或"还是……的好"解,用于提出建议。如:

You may as well stay where you are. 你还是原地呆着好。

All the pubs are closing. We may as well go home.

所有的酒馆都打烊了。我们还是回家吧。

在对由 may 引出的"请求许可"的问句做出肯定回答时,通常不用过于严肃和正式的"Yes, you may.",而多用"Yes, please?(请便)"或"Of course/ Certainly(当然可以).";否定回答时,常用"Please don't(请不要)."或"No, you mustn't(不行)."

4. might 的用法

(1) might 表示许可。如:

Might I have a word with you? 我可以同你说句话吗?

Might I make a suggestion? 我可以提一项建议吗?

Might we ask you a favour? 我们可以请你帮个忙吗?

但要注意: Might I...比 May I...更客气,但是不如 May I...常用。

(2) might 表示说话人的猜测, 其把握性比 may 小。如:

Mr Smith might be right. 史密斯先生或许是对的。

He might have some fever. 他可能有点发烧。

(3) might 用于委婉地提出建议、责备等。如:

You might ask him for help. 你可以请他帮忙嘛。

You might ask before you borrow my car.

你可以先问问我再借我的车嘛。

(4) "might+完成式" (表示说话人对过去情况的抱怨、责备、遗憾等)。如:

You might have considered her feelings. 你本应考虑她的感受。

You might have let me know earlier. 你本来该早一些告诉我。

5. must 的用法

(1) must 表义务或强制。如:

I must go now. 我必须走了。

Soldiers must obey orders. 军人必须服从命令。

Visitors must leave bags in the cloakroom.

参观者须把包放到物品寄存处。

must 用于一般疑问句时, 其肯定答语应用 Yes, please.或 I'm afraid so.其否定答语应用 needn't 或 don't have to.

- -- Must I go tomorrow? 明天我必须去吗?
- —Yes, please. 是的。
- —No, you needn't. 不,你不必去。

must 的否定式 must not/mustn't 表示禁止。

You mustn't leave here. 你不许离开这儿。

Cars mustn't be parked in front of the entrance. 车不能停在入口处。

(2) must 表示说话人有把握的猜测,仅限于肯定句。如:

He must be at home now. 他现在肯定在家。

You must be joking. 你一定是在开玩笑。

He must be mad. 他一定是疯了。

- (3) "must+进行式"表示对现在情况有把握的猜测,仅限于肯定句。如: You must be joking. 你一定是在开玩笑吧。
- (4) "must+完成式"表示对过去情况有把握的猜测,仅限于肯定句。如:

You must have known what he wanted.

你当时肯定知道他想干什么。

Emm must have been very young when she got married.

埃玛结婚时一定很年轻。

(5) "must+完成进行式"表示对过去情况有把握的猜测,仅限于肯定句。如:

He must have been working. 他肯定一直在工作。

情态动词的其他形式

1. shall 的用法

(1) shall 用于疑问句中,征求对方的意愿;这时可以用第一人称和第三人称。如:

Shall I turn on the light? 要开灯吗?(我把灯打开好吗?)

Shall we sit here? 咱们坐这儿怎么样?(坐这儿好吗?)

Shall we begin now? 我们现在开始,好吗?

Shall he send you a check? 要不要他给你寄张支票?

(2) shall 用于陈述句,与第二人称或第三人称连用,表示允诺、命令、警告和强制,或表示说话人的决心等。如:

She shall get her share. 她可以得到她的一份。(允诺)

Then you shall come. 那你就得来.(命令)

Nothing shall stop us from carrying out this plan.

什么也不能阻止我们实现这项计划。(决心)

2. should 的用法

(1) should 表 "应该" ,用于所有人称,表示常理认为是对的事或适宜做的事,通常意义为"应该"。如:

You should be more careful next time. 你下次应该再细心些。

We should always bear this in mind. 我们要把这一点常记在心里。

(2) "should+完成式"表示说话人对过去情况的抱怨、责备、后悔等。如:

I should have taken her advice. 我本该采纳她的建议的。

I shouldn't have treated her like that. 我不该那样待她来着。

(3) 表示说话人对过去情况的猜测。如:

The guests should have arrived now. 客人可能已经到了。

3. will 的用法

(1) will 表示主语的决心或意愿。如:

I won't argue with you. 我不愿意跟你争辩。

I will do all I can. 我会尽力去做。

If you want help, let me know, will you?

需要帮忙就告诉我,好吗?

(2) 作为情态动词, will 表示说话人的猜测, 意为"大概"。如:

That will be the book you want. 那大概是你所要的书。

Ask him. He will know. 问他吧, 他大概知道。

(3) will 表示主语的习惯或习惯能力。如:

The young man will sit there for hours doing nothing.

那个年轻人常几个小时坐在那儿无所事事。

Water will boil at 100℃. 水在 100℃时沸腾。

4. would 的用法

(1) would 表示主语的意愿。如:

That's just what he would want. 那正是他想要的。

His daughter wouldn't listen to anybody.

他女儿谁的话也听不进去。

(2) "Would you...?" 表示客气的请求。如:

Would you please lend me your pen? 借用一下你的钢笔好吗?

What would you like to drink? 你想喝点什么?

(3) "Would you like / prefer...?" 表示提议或邀请。如:

Would you like some coffee? 你要不要喝点咖啡?

(4) would 表示说话人的猜测,其把握性比 will 小。如:

It would be about ten o'clock when he left home.

他离开家时大概是10点左右。

That would be in 1976, I think. 我想那可能是在 1976年。

(5) would 表示过去的习惯性动作。如:

Sometimes he would come to see us. 他有时来看看我们。

Every evening he would come to say goodnight.

每天晚上他都来道晚安。

(6) "would+完成式"表示对过去情况的猜测。如:

The tour group would have reached New York.

旅游团可能已经到纽约了。

I thought you knew. I thought Maxim would have told you.

我以为你知道了。我以为马克西姆会告诉你的。

5. have to 的用法

have to 主要用于表示客观外界向主语施加的义务。它有一般现在时单数第三人称形式 has to 和过去时形式 had to , 也可以与助动词和其他情态动词连用。如:

I shall have to go to the clinic today for my bad cough.

我咳嗽得很厉害,今天得去诊所。

You will have to come tomorrow. 你明天得来。

在口语中也可用 have(has)got to(美国英语可省去 have)。英国英语还可用其否定与疑问结构。如:

You haven't got to work tomorrow. 明天你不用上班。 (got 可省去)

Have you got to work tomorrow? 你明天得上班吗? (got 可省去)

有时 don't have to 与 haven't got to 的含义有所不同,如:

You don't have to change at London. 你不用在伦敦换车。(指通常)

You haven't got to change at London. 你不用在伦敦换车。(指这一次)

6. ought to 的用法

(1) ought to 表示出于义务、责任、道义等方面的要求而该做的事。如:

You ought to go to see the doctor. 你该去看病。

He said you ought to tell the police.

他说你应该去报警。

(2) ought to 表示说话人的猜测。如:

John ought to know how to use the mchine.

约翰可能知道怎么用这个机器。

但要注意:在表示义务和猜测时, ought to 通常可以和 should 换用。

7. need 的用法

(1) 表必要性, 多用于疑问句、否定句或否定意味的疑问句中。如:

You needn't hurry. 你不必着急。

Need I repeat it? 需要我重复吗?/p>

(2) "need+完成式"表示对过去情况温和的责备、后悔等,通常限于否定句。如:

We needn't have hurried. 我们当时不必那么匆忙。

The car needs cleaning.=The car needs to be cleaned.

车需要清洗了。

We need some more money. 我们还需要些钱。/p>

8. dare 的用法

(1) 作为情态动词, dare 没有人称和数的变化, 现在时和过去时的形式相同, 通常用于否定句和疑问句。如:

Dare you jump down from the tree? 你敢从树上跳下来吗?

How dare you be so rude? 你怎么敢如此无理?

(2) dare 还可用作实义动词,作实义动词时,它有动词的全部形式,后面要跟带 to 的不定式。如:

The girl didn't dare to go by herself. 那女孩不敢独自去。

He dared to say no more.他不再敢说什么了。

(3) dare 作实义动词时有人称和数的变化,有现在时和过去时形式,可以和助动词连用,也不仅只用于否定和疑问句,而且 dare 之后的不定式符号 to 可以省略。如:

Who dares (to) go? 谁敢去?

She did not dare (to) go out after dark.

她天黑以后不敢出门。

(4) 作为实义动词, dare 除了作上面的"敢于"之外,还可以作"向……挑战"和"敢于面对"解。如:

I dare you to do it. 我谅你不敢做这事。

The young man dared the anger of the entire family.

那年轻人不怕惹起全家人的愤怒。

9. used to 的用法

(1) used to 表示过去的习惯动作或状态,现在已不存在,没有人称和数的变化。如:

Natalie told us she used to go church.

纳塔莉告诉我们她过去常去做礼拜。

It used to be a prosperous town.

这里过去是一个繁荣的城镇。

(2) used to 的否定式和疑问式有两种形式。一种是不用助动词,另一种是借助于助动词 did,而借助于助动词的形式更为常见。如:

I didn't use to/usedn't to/used not to get tired when I played tennis.

我过去打网球时不感到累。

Did you use to / used to play tennis?或 Used you to play tennis?

你过去打网球吗?

There used to be a pub here, didn't use there / usedn't there?

过去这里有一个小酒馆,对吗?

(3) used to do (作 "过去经常做" 解) 与 be used to sth / doing sth (作 "习惯于某事 / 做某事"解)。如:

I'm used to life in the country. 我习惯于乡村生活。

She was not used to getting up early. 她不习惯早起。

虚拟语气

在非真实条件句中的用法

1. 非真实条件句中谓语动词的形式

	条件从句	结果从句
与现在事实相反	If I (we,you,he,they)+ 动词过去式(be 的过去式用 were)	I(we) should.You would. He would .They would+动词原形
与过去事实相反	If I (we,you,he,they)+had+过去分词	I(we) should.You would.He would .They would +have+动词原形
与将来事实可能相反	If I (we,you,he,they)+ 动词过去式(be 的过去式用 were)/were to/should	I(we) should.You would. He would .They would +动词原形

但要注意:美国英语的结果主句,不管什么人称,皆常用would。

2. 与现在事实相反的非真实条件句

虚拟语气用在与现在事实相反条件句中时,条件从句的谓语用动词的过去式(be 的过去式用 were),结果主句的谓语用 should(第一人称)或 would(第二、三人称) + 动词原形。如:

I am sorry I am very busy now. If I had time, I would certainly come to see you.

很抱歉,我很忙。如果有时间,我一定去看你了。

If it weren't for their support, we would be in a difficult situation.

要不是有他们的支持,我们的处境会很困难。

if places were alike, there would be little need for geographers.

如果各个地方都一样,就不需要地理学家了。

If I were you, I would apply for the job.

如果我是你,我会申请那份工作的。

What would you do if you knew who broke the glass.

要是你知道谁打破了玻璃,你会怎么办?

Even if I had the money, I wouldn't buy it.

即使我有钱也不会买它。

3. 与过去事实相反的非真实条件句

虚拟语气用在与过去事实相反的条件句中时,条件从句的谓语用 had + 过去分词,结果主句的谓语用 should(第一人称) 或 would (第二、三人称) + have + 过去分词。如:

If I had taken your advice, I wouldn't have made such a mistake.

如果当时听了你的话,我就不会犯这样的错误了。

If it had not been for your help, I wouldn't have finished the work so easily.

要不是你的帮助,我的工作不会这么容易完成。

If we had known the basic principles, we should have controlled the process even better.

如果我们知道这些基本原理,我们早就能更好地控制这个工序了。

If facts had been collected one week earlier, we should have had more time to study them.

假使早一个星期收集事实,我们就有更多的时间研究它们了。

The conference wouldn' t have been so successful if we hadn' t made adequate preparation.

如果我们不做充分的准备,会议是不会开得这么成功的。

4. 与将来事实相反的非真实条件句

(1)虚拟语气用在与将来事实相反的条件句中时,条件从句的谓语用动词的过去式(be 的过去式用 were),were to 或 should,结果主句用 should(第一人称)或 would (第二、三人称)+动词原形。如:

If it rained(were to rain/ should rain) tomorrow, I should stay at home.

如果明天下雨,我会呆在家里。

If the teacher knew it, he would be angry.

万一老师知道了这事,他会生气的。

I wouldn't lose courage even if I should fail again.

即使再次失败我也不会气馁。

If I made a mistake, I should try to remedy it.

假如我犯了错误,我就会设法补救。

If something should go wrong, the control rods would drop.

万一发生什么事故,控制杆就会下落。

(2) 在与将来事实相反的条件句中,其条件从句的谓语也可用 were to + 动词原形。这种虚拟式比较正式,多用于书面语中,其假想性很强,实现性很小。如:

If I were to do it, I would do it another way.

要是我来做这件事,我会用另一种方法。

If he were to come tomorrow, I would speak to him about it.

假如明天他来,我会跟他谈这个问题。

5. 情态助动词用于虚拟语气

有不少情态助动词也可用于虚拟语气。如:

May you live a long and happy life.

愿你长寿幸福。(may 只用于表示愿望)

If there were no friction, an automobile could not move.

没有摩擦力,汽车就不能开动。

But for your help, we couldn't have succeeded.

要不是你的帮助,我们是不会成功的。

If computers had not been invited, many problems on space flight could not have been solved.

如果没有发明计算机的话,宇宙飞行的许多问题就不可能解决。

6. were , had , should 等置于主语之前

在书面语中,条件从句可以不用连词 if,而将谓语中的过去式 were,had 或 should 等移至主语之前。如:

Were you in my position, what would you do?

假如你处在我的位置,你会怎么做?

Were he to leave today, he would get there by Friday.

如果他今天动身,星期五前会赶到那儿。

Had some work been done, energy would have been applied.

如果做了一定量的功,就一定消耗了能量。

Had they time, they would come to see you.

如果他们有时间,他们就会来看你。

Should it rained tomorrow, the meeting would be postponed.

万一明天下雨,会议就会延期。

Should he come, he would be able to examine the trial run of the machine.

如果他来,他就能检验这台机器的试车情况了。

7. 条件从句与结果主句所表示的时间不一致

(1) 当条件从句与结果主句所表示的时间不一致(如一个是过去发生的,一个是现在发生的)时,虚拟语气的形式应作相应的调整。如: If you were in better health, we would have asked you to come.

如果你身体好一些,我们早就请你来了。

If we had consulted him on the guestion yesterday, we should know what to do now.

假如昨天我们向他请教了这个问题,现在就知道该怎么办了。

You would be much better now if you had taken my advice. 假如你接受了我的意见,你现在就会好得多。

(2) 如果条件从句用 if I were . . . , 结果主句则可用任何时间的虚拟形式。如:

If I were not busy, I would have come.

假如我不忙,我就会去的。(were 表过去)

8. 虚拟语气在含蓄条件句中的用法

(1) 条件暗含在短语中。如:

We didn't know his telephone number; otherwise we would have telephoned him.

我们不知道他的电话号码,否则我们就会给他打电话。(暗含条件是 otherwise)

Without your help, we wouldn't have achieved so much.

没有你的帮助,我们不可能取得这么大的成绩。

(暗含条件是介词短语 without your help)

But for your help, I would not have succeeded in the experiment.

如果没有你的帮助,我的实验就不会成功。(暗含条件是 but for your help)

It would cause great trouble not to lubricate the bearing immediately.

不立即润滑轴承就会引起很大的故障。

(暗含条件是 not to lubricate the bearing immediately)

Alone, she would have been terrified.

(2) 条件暗含在上下文中。如:

I would not have done it that way.

我是不会那么做的。(可能暗含 if I were you)

I was busy that day. Otherwise I would have come to help you.

我那天很忙。否则我会来帮你的。 (可能暗含 if I hadn't been so busy.)

You might come to join us in the discussion.

你可以参加我们的讨论。(可能暗含 if you wanted to)

I would have bought the DVD player.

我是会买下那台影碟机的。 (可能暗含 if I had the money)

But for the storm, we should have arrived earlier.

要不是碰到暴雨,我们还会早些到。(可能暗含 if it had not been for the storm)。

9. 省去结果主句的非真实条件句

非真实条件句若省去结果主句,则常表示一种不可能实现的愿望。这种条件句常用 if only 来引导。如:

If I could see him once 我只要再见到他一次就好了。

If only he were here.

如果他在这儿就好了。

If only I hadn't done that.

我要是没做那事就好了

If only I had more time to think about it.

我要是有更多的时间考虑这个问题就好了。

If only you would take my advice.

你如果听我的意见就好了。

If only she didn't drive so fast!

她要是别开那么快就好了。

10. 不用 if 引导的条件句

非真实条件句的条件从句除用 if 引导外,还可用 when, unless, lest, as if, for fear, in case, on condition that 等词语来引导。如:

The government prepared to award them when the experiment should be completed.

政府已准备在实验完成后嘉奖他们。

Steel parts were usually covered with grease lest they should rust.

钢部件通常涂有油脂以免生锈。

Unless I were well, I wouldn't be at work.

除非我好了,否则我不会去上班。

The electric current flows through a conductor as if it were a fluid.

电流好像液体般地流过导体。

He handled the instrument with care for fear (that) it should be damaged.

他小心地摆弄那仪器, 生怕把它弄坏。

Take some more money with you in case you should need it.

多带点儿钱以备急用。

He can use the car on condition that he should return it tomorrow.

如果明天车能还回来,他就可以把车借去。

Suppose you were given a chance to get the job, would you accept?

假如你有机会得到那份工作,你会接受吗?

但要注意:与 if 一样,上述词语所引导的条件从句也可用直陈语气,表可能实现或发生的事。

虚拟语气在从句中的用法

1. 主语从句中的用法

(1) 在以 it 为形式主语的复合句中,虚拟语气在主语从句中表示建议、要求、命令等,谓语动词用 should be 型或 be 型虚拟式,在美国英语中常用 be 型虚拟式。如:

It's natural that she should do so.

她这么做是很自然的事。

It is essential that we should tell her the news.

我们有必要告诉她这个消息。

It is important that we should make full use of our mineral resources.

对我们来说,充分利用我国的矿产资源是重要的。

It is strange that the result of the experiment should be unsatisfactory.

奇怪的是实验结果竟然如此令人不满意。

It is desired that we should get everything ready by tonight.

希望一切在今晚准备好。

It was arranged that Mr Sam should go and help Bettie.

他们作了安排,由萨姆先生去帮助贝蒂。

(2) 主句的谓语为某些动词的被动语态,常用在 It is (was) desired (suggested, settled, proposed, recommended, requested, decided, etc.) that...句型中。

It is suggested that the question should be discussed at the next meeting.

有人建议在下次会上讨论这个问题。

It is vital that he should be warned before it is too late.

在还不太晚的时候警告他是非常必要的。

It has been decided that the sports meet should be postponed till next Friday.

已决定运动会延期到下星期五。

It was requested that a vote (should) be taken.

有人要求进行表决。

2. 在宾语从句中的用法

(1) wish 的宾语从句中的谓语动词形式

① 动词的过去式表示对现在情况的假设。如:

I wish prices would come down.

我真希望物价会下降。

I wish you would stop asking silly questions.

我希望你不要再问这种愚蠢的问题。

I wish I knew his address.

可惜我不知道他的地址。

I wish we could go with him.

我们要是能跟他一起去该多好。

② had+过去分词表示对过去情况的假设。如:

I wish I had known it before.

我真希望我预先知道这件事。

He wishes he hadn't been rude to his parents.

他真希望他没有对父母无礼。

She wished that she had stayed at home.

她想那时要是留在家里就好了。

I wish I could have been there yesterday.

要是我昨天到过那里该多好。

(2) would rather 等的宾语从句中的谓语动词形式

用 would rather(=would sooner)和 would(just)as soon(=would sooner)等表示愿望,但其宾语从句常用虚拟过去式。如:

I would rather you came tomorrow than today.

我宁愿你明天来,而不是今天。

I could do it myself but I would sooner you did it.

我自己也可以做,但我宁愿你去做。

I would rather you had told me the truth.

我倒想你本该把事实真相告诉我。

- (3) suggest 等的宾语从句中的谓语动词形式
- ① 用 should + 动词原形或只用动词原形的 that 从句,作为 demand, order, prepose, request, require, suggest, arrange, insist, command, desire, advocate, maintain, urge, direct, move, prefer, arrange, recommend 等词的宾语。如:

The expert proposed that TV should be turned off at least one four every day.

专家提议每天至少应该关掉电视一个小时。

The board recommended that the company should invest in the new property.

董事会建议公司投资新的房地产。

The committee has given instructions that the manager should fly to New York.

委员会已发出指示,要经理飞往纽约。

Secretary of War Edwin M. Stanton ordered that James Van Metre should be released.

陆军部长埃德温·M·斯坦顿命令将詹姆斯?范?米特释放。

He asked that the arrangements be made to help them finish the work.

他要求做好安排,帮他们完成工作。

Experiments demand that accurate measurements be made.

实验要求做到准确的计量。

She insisted that we take up the matter at the meeting.

她坚持要求我们在会上谈这个问题。

② 有些动词,如 think, expect, believe 其否定式的宾语从句亦可用 should + 动词原形。如:

I never thought he should refuse.

我万没想到他会拒绝。

I had not expected that things should turn out like this.

我没料到事情的结果竟是这样。

3. 在表语从句中的用法

虚拟语气也可用在表语从句中。这种从句由 that (可省略)所引导,其谓语是 should +动词原形。句子主句中的主语常常是 suggestion, proposal, idea, motion, order, recommendations, plan, impossibility, possibility 等名词。如:

His suggestion was that everyone should have map.

他的建议是每人发一张地图。

My idea is that the electronic device should be tested at once.

我的意见是这一电子器件要立即试验。

在主句中作主语的名词常见的有:

advice, aim, desire, idea, insistence, motion, necessity, order, plan, proposal, recommendation, regulation, requirement, suggestion, wish等。

4. 虚拟语气在同位语从句中的用法

当与同位语从句同位的是 suggestion 等表示建议、计划、命令等的名词时,从句的谓语动词用 should+动词原形,美国英语中常用动词原形。 They made the request that the problem should be discussed as soon as possible.

他们要求尽快讨论这个问题。

He gave orders that the work should be started at once.

他命令工作马上开始。

The proposal that he (should) be dismissed was supported at the meeting.

大会对开除他的提议表示了支持。

5. 虚拟语气在状语从句中的用法

(1) 虚拟语气在让步状语从句中的用法

① 由连接词 whether, if, even if/though, whatever, so ong as 引导的状语从句,其谓语可用虚拟语气,即其谓语用动词原形。如:

Whether the figures be accurate or not, they have to be rechecked.

不管那些数字准确与否,都得重新核对。

The earth is powerful magnet and all magnets behave the same whether they be large or small.

地球是一个强大的磁体,而所有的磁体无论大小其作用都是一样的。

They have decided to build a reservoir, whatever the difficulties may be.

他们决心建造一座水库,不管有多少困难。

I won't let you in whoever you may be.

无论你是谁我都不让进去。

However hard the task may be, we must fulfill it on time.

不管任务多么艰巨,我们必须按时完成。

If the defendant be found guilty, he shall have the right of appeal.

如果被告被判有罪,他有权上诉。

② 倒装的让步状语从句中的虚拟语气。如:

Come what may, we will go ahead.

不管怎样,我们一定要前进。

However hard it may rain, we shall have to go.

无论雨多大,我们都得走。

(2) 虚拟语气在方式状语从句中的用法

以连接词 as if 引导的状语从句(谓语形式与 wish 后的宾语从句相同,be 在第一、三人称可用 was 或 were)。如:

You speak as if you had really been there.

你说的好像你真的去过那里。

Light often behaves as though it were made of particles.

光的性状,常常有点儿像由粒子组成的。

He spoke to me as if I was(were)deaf.

他跟我说话时就好像我是聋子似的。

(3) 虚拟语气在目的状语从句中的用法

以 lest, for fear that 和 in case 引出的状语从句 (谓语多用 should 加动词原形构成)。如:

Batteries should be kept in dry places lest electricity should leak away.

电池应放在干燥的地方,以免漏电。

He handled the instrument with care for fear that it should be damaged.

他小心地弄那仪器,生怕把它弄坏。

I' Il keep a seat for you in case you should change your mind.

我给你留一个位子,说不定你会改变主意。

6. 虚拟语气在 it is time 后的定语从句中的用法

虚拟语气还可用在定语从句中,这种从句常用在 it is (high, about) time (that)....句型中。定语从句常用虚拟过去式。如:

It is time we started.

我们该出发了。

It is time we set to work.

我们该着手工作了。

It is time we left.

我们该走了。

It is time we should leave.

我们该走了。

It is time I were off.

我该走了。

It's high time the weather improved.

天气真该好起来了。

但要注意:位于 time 之前的 high 起着强调 "为时稍晚" 的作用。

不定式

不定式(短语)作主语、表语、宾语、补足语

1. 不定式 (短语)作主语

不定式作主语时既可位于句首,又可用先行词 it 作形式主语。不定式短语作主语时,为了保持句子平衡,往往用 it 作形式主语,而把不定式短语置于谓语动词之后。

To improve our teaching method is very important.

改进我们的教学方法是非常重要的。

It would be a waste of time to look up every new word as it comes along.

碰到生词就查词典是很浪费时间的。

It would take some 100 workers a year's time to complete the project.

完成这项工程大约需要一百名工人一年的时间。

2. 不定式 (短语)作表语

His ambition is to become a successful scientist.

他的抱负是要成为一名成功的科学家。

The primary reason why the Constition requires a census every ten years is to provide a basis for the apportionment of representatives among the states.

宪法要求每10年进行一次人口普查,其主要原因是为各州之间众议院议员的比例分配提供一个基础。

3. 不定式 (短语)作动词宾语

(1) 有些及物动词常用动词不定式作宾语。这些动词有:

affored 担负得起	agree 同意	arrange 安排	ask 要求	attempt 试图
beg 乞求	begin 开始	care 介意	choose 愿意	claim 声称
consent 同意	continue 继续	contrive 发明	dare 敢	decide 决定
decline 谢绝	demand 要求	deserv 值得	desire 希望	determine 决心
endeavor 尽力	expect 期望	fail 未能	fear 害怕	forget 忘记
guarantee 保证	happen 碰巧	help 帮助	hesitate 犹豫	hope 希望
intend 企图	learn 学会	long 渴望	manage 设法	mean 意欲
need 需要	offer 提出	petition 请求	plan 计划	pledge 保证
plot 密谋	pray 祈祷	prepare 准备	pretend 假装	promise 许诺
refuse 拒绝	resolve 解决	seek 寻求	swear 发誓	think 想起
tend 倾向于	threaten 威胁	undertake 承担	venture 冒险	volunteer 志愿
vow 宣誓	want 想要	wish 希望		

如:

They decided to change their mind.

他们决定改变主意。

I can't afford to live in a detached house.

我住不起独门独院的房子。

(2) 疑问词+动词不定式作宾语的动词有:

ask 询问	consider 考虑	decide 决定	discover 发现
discuss 讨论	explain 解释	find out 查明	forget 忘记
inquire 打听	know 知道	learn 学会	remember 记得
show 演示	tell 说出	think 考虑	understand 懂得
wonder 想知道			

如:

I don't know what to do next.

我不知道下一步该干什么。

He found out where to buy fruit cheaply.

他打听出在哪儿买水果便宜。

(3) 不定式 (短语)作复合宾语中的宾语:

不定式 (短语) 在 consider ,find ,make ,regard ,think 等动词后作复合宾语中的宾语时,通常用先行词 it 作形式宾语:

I find it interesting to study English.

我觉得学英语很有趣。

The boy feels it difficult to answer the question.

那男孩感到回答这个问题很困难。

4.不定式 (短语)作介词宾语

不定式 (短语)作介词宾语主要用于作介词 except 和 but 的宾语。

The old man's son did nothing but play games.

老人的儿子除了玩游戏之外,什么都不干。

He wanted nothing but to stay there.

他只想待在那儿,别的什么都不想。

但要注意:如果句中的 except 或 but 之前有实义动词 do 的限定形式或非限定形式,其宾语为不带 to 的不定式,否则,其宾语为带 to 的不定式。

5. 不定式 (短语)作宾语补足语

(1) 动词不定式可用作复合宾语中的宾语补足语。常跟不定式作宾补的动词有:

advise 劝告	allow 允许	ask 要求	beg 请求
cause 促使	compel 强迫	convince 使信服	command 指挥
direct 指导	enable 使能够	encourage 鼓励	expect 期望
feel 觉得	force 迫使	get 使得	hate 不喜欢
have 使	hear 听见	help 帮助	hire 雇请
inspire 鼓舞	intend 打算要	invite 邀请	instruct 指示
lead 引导	let 让	listen(to) 听	look(at) 看
make 使得	notice 注意到	observe 观察	order 命令
permit 允许	persuade 说服	press 迫使	remind 提醒
request 请求	teach 教	tell 告诉	urge 激励
want 想要	watch 注视	warn 警告	wish 希望

如:

My English techer advised me to buy a better dictionary.

我的英语老师建议我买本好一点的词典。

I' d prefer you to stay out of the dispute.

我宁愿你不要介入这场争论。

(2) 在 feel, have, hear, let, listen to, look at, make, notice, observe, see, watch 等动词后面,复合宾语中动词不定式的标记 to 通常被省略。动词 help 后的不定式的 to 可以省去,也可以保留。如:

I saw her enter the cinema.

我看见她进了电影院。

A conductor uses signals and gestures to let the musicians know when to play carious parts of a composition.

乐队指挥使用信号和手势让音乐家们知道乐曲的各个部分何时演奏。

6. 不定式 (短语)作主语补足语

(1) 要求不定式作宾语补足语的大部分动词(have, let, motice, watch 等除外)都可以作被动句中的谓语,这样,在主动句中作宾语补足语的不定式(短语)便在被动句中作主语补足语。如:

The room was found to be empty.

那个房间被发现是空的。(to be 是主语补语)

The young man was considered to have great promise.

这个青年被认为大有前途。(to have 是主语补语)

值得注意的是,作宾语补足语的不带 to 的不定式在被动句中作主语补足语时须带 to。如:

They were made to wait for hours.

他们被迫等了好几个小时。

(2) 不定式 (短语) 在 "主—动—that 从句"的被动句中作主语补足语。如:

It is reported to be true.

据报导那是真的。(to be 是主语补语)

He is said to be from New Zealand.

据说他是新西兰人。(to be 是主语补语)

7. 不定式 (短语)作形容词补语

有不少形容词(包括已变成形容词的分词)可后接不定式。有的语法家将这种不定式也叫做宾语。如:

I am very glad to see you.

我见到您很高兴。

The students are sorry to leave.

学生为离去而难过。

He is sure to come.

他一定会来的。

Are we likely to arrive in time?

我们能够及时到达吗?

但要注意:这样的形容词多是表示思想感情的。除上述形容词外,还有 able ,afraid ,anxious ,careful ,content ,foolish ,inclined ,prepared ,ready ,slow ,willing 等。

不定式(短语)作定语、状语、独立成分

1. 不定式 (短语)作定语

(1) 被修饰的名词或代词与作定语的不定式之间存在着逻辑上的主谓关系。如:

She has a brother to help her.

她有个哥哥帮她。

The question will be discussed at the conference shortly to open in Beijing.

这个问题将在不久于北京召开的会议上讨论。

The next train to arrive was from New York.

下一列到站的火车是从纽约开来的。

He was always the first to come and last to leave the office.

他总是第一个到办公室,最后一个离开。(first与last之后省去了person)

(2) 被修饰的名词或代词与作定语的不定式之间存在着逻辑上的动宾关系。如:

It was a game to remember.

那是一场令人难忘的球赛。

The manager has too many things to do.

经理要做的事太多了。

I have nothing to say on this question.

在这个问题上, 我没有什么话要说。

(3) 不定式 (短语) 作某些抽象名词的定语。

The sales manager had every reason to complain.

销售经理有充足的理由表示不满。

My cousin expressed his intention to resign.

我表兄表达了辞职的打算。

I could see her eagerness to see you.

我看得出她渴望见到你。

His failure to pass the examination surprised us.

他的落榜使我们吃惊。

That diplomat is reputed for his ability to speak four languages.

那位外交官以能讲四种语言而闻名。

(4) "介词+关系代词+不定式(短语)"作定语。如:

The employer has a lot of people from whom to select.

雇主可以在许多人中进行挑选。

A notebook is a book in which to write notes.

笔记本用来记笔记。

I must buy a hammer with which to nail down the box.

我必须买一把锤子钉箱子。

(5) "不定式(短语)+介词"作定语

I need a pen to write with.

我需要一支笔写字。

Give me some paper to write on.

给我一些纸写字。

① 作定语的不定式如果是不及物动词,或者不定式所修饰的名词或代词是不定式动作的地点、工具等,不定式后面须加相应的介词。如:

She is looking for a room to live in. 她在寻找一间房子住。

There is nothing to worry about. 没有什么可担心的。

但是,不定式所修饰的名词如果是time, place或way,不定式后面的介词习惯上可省去。如:

He had no place to live. 他没有居住的地方。

② 在 there + be 这一句型中,动词不定式作定语时可能出现动词不定式的被动式,其含义与主动式基本相同。但当说话人考虑的是必须有人去完成某件事时,不定式用主动形式,如果说话人强调的是事情本身必须完成,则用被动形式。如:

There are many books to read/ to be read. 有好多书要读。

There's plenty of work to do. (somebody has to do the work.)

There's plenty of work to be done. (The work has to be done.)

请注意下面两个句子含义的区别:

There is nothing to do.(We have nothing to do now.)

(意为无事可做,感到十分无聊。)

There is nothing to be done. (We can do nothing now.)

(意为某东西坏了,无法使之恢复正常。)

2. 不定式 (短语)作状语

(1) 不定式 (短语)作目的状语

Every morning he gets up very early to exercise.

每天早晨他早早起床去锻炼身体。

A fuel is a sucstance used to generate light, heat or energy.

燃料是一种用来产生光、热或能量的物质。

Dams are used to control flooding, provide water for irrigation, and generating electricity for the surrounding area.

水坝被用于防洪、提供灌溉用水、并为周围地区发电。

He hesitated in order to/so as to choose the right word.

他迟疑了一下,以便选择合适的字眼。

(2) 不定式 (短语) 作结果状语

① 不定式作结果状语时,往往仅限于 learn(得知), find(发现), see(看见), hear(听见),to be told(被告知),

make (使得)等几个具有终止含义的动词。如:

Sam returned home to learn his son had gone to the countryside.

萨姆回家后才知道他的儿子已去了乡下。

A few years later we came to our home to find that our home town had greatly changed.

几年后我们回到家里,发现家乡的面貌大大地改变了。

② 不定式 (短语) 也可用 enough 和 too...to 结构表示结果。如:

Uncle Tom was too ill to attend the meeting.

汤姆叔叔病得很重,无法出席会议。

He is old enough to join the army.

他够参军年龄了。

You are old enough to take care of yourself now.

你长大了,足能照料你自己了。

The boy is too short to reach the top of the shelf.

那男孩太矮了,够不着书架的顶层。

Attention:

(i)某些形容词在"too…to…"结构中没有否定的含义,而是表示肯定,这类形容词有 anxious,apt, delighted, eager, easy, glad, kind, pleased, ready, surprised, willing 等。如:

He is too ready to find fault.他老是爱挑毛病。

She was too surprised to see how angry her father was.看到爸爸那么生气,她非常吃惊。

(ii) 在 not, never, only, all ,but 等后的 "too...to..." 结构中 , "too" 的含义为 "very" , 不定式没有否定含义。如:

I' m only too pleased to help you. 我非常愿意帮助你。

It's never too late to learn. 活到老,学到老。

(iii) 动词不定式和 only 连用时, 常表示未预料到的结果。如:

He went to the station hurriedly only to find the train had left.

他匆匆地赶到车站,却发现火车已经离开了。

I went to see my friend only to learn he was in hospital. 我去看我的朋友,不料他住院了。

He survived the crash only to die in the desert. 他幸存于坠机事故,结果却死在沙漠里。

③ 不定式 (短语)在 "so+形容词/副词+as" 之后作结果状语。

She wouldn't be so careless as to forget her luggage. 她不可能粗心到忘了带行李的程度。

The house is so high and narrow as to resemble a tower. 这房子又高又窄,像一座塔。

④ 不定式 (短语)在 "such (+名词短语)+as" 之后作结果状语。

His indifference is such as to make one despair. 他如此冷淡,令人感到绝望。

Baker can't have done such a terrible thing as to keep you waiting for so long. 贝克不可能做出这么糟糕的事让你等了这么久。

(3) 不定式 (短语) 作方式状语

不定式 (短语) 作方式状语时, 前面由 as if / as though 引导:

He opened his mouth as if to speak. 他张开嘴,好像要说话。

She stood up as if to leave. 她站了起来,好像要离开。

3. 不定式 (短语)作独立成分

(1) 不定式(短语)可以作句子的插入语。

To begin with , I do not like its colour.

首先,我不喜欢它的颜色。

To tell the truth, the film was a great disappointment to me.

说实在的,那部影片使我大为失望。

To make a long story short, we agreed to disagree.

长话短说,我们同意各自保留不同的看法。

How time flies , to be sure!

时光真是过得快啊!

The dog is , so to speak , a member of the family.

那狗可以说是家庭的一员了。

(2) 常见的用作插入语的不定式短语有:

to	be brief 简言之	to be exact 确切地说	to be frank 坦率地说
to	be sure 肯定地说	to begin with 首先	to conclude 最后

不定式的时态、复合结构及省略

1. "疑问词 (who, what, which, when, where, how) + 不定式 (短语)"结构

(1) "疑问词+不定式(短语)"作主语。如:

When to start has not been decided.

何时动身尚未决定。

How to use this new technique will be discussed tomorrow.

如何利用这一新技术将在明天讨论。

(2) "疑问词+不定式(短语)"作表语。如:

The trouble is how to get in touch with him.

问题是如何同他取得联系。

The difficulty was how to cross the river.

困难在于如何过河。

(3) "疑问词+不定式(短语)"作动词宾语。如:

I don't know what to do. 我不知道该怎么办。

The policeman did not know whether to go there or not.

警察不知是否该去那儿。

He told me which way to take. 他告诉我该走哪条路。

(4) "疑问词+不定式(短语)"作介词宾语。如:

They were concerned with how to solve the problem. 他们关心的是如何解决问题。

I have no idea of how to do it. 我不知道如何做此事。

2. 不定式时态的形式 (一般式、进行式、完成式和被动式)

(1) 不定式的一般式通常表示其动作与谓语动词的动作同时发生或在其后发生。如:

I often hear Dick play the piano in the next room.

我常常听见迪克在隔壁弹钢琴。(hear 与 play 两个动作同时发生)

They saw him go out.

他们看见他出去了。(saw与goout同时发生)

(2) 但在多数情况下,动词不定式一般式表示的动作发生在谓语动词表示的动作之后。如:

He hopes to become a university student this year.

他希望今年能成为一名大学生。 (to become 这个动作发生在 hope 之后)

They decided to plant more trees this spring.

他们决定今年春天栽更多的树。 (to plant 这个动作发生在 decided 之后)

(3) 不定式的进行式通常表示其动作与谓语动词的动作同时发生。

My supervisor happened to be correcting my dissertation when I came in.

当我进来的时候,碰巧我的导师在修改我的论文。

They seemed to be discussing something important.

他们似乎在讨论重要的事情。

(4) 不定式的完成式通常表示其动作在谓语动词的动作之前完成。如:

I' m sorry to have kept you waiting.

很抱歉,让你久等了。(to have kept 发生在 am 所表示的时间之前)

Robert is said to have written a book on war on Iraq.

听说罗伯特写了一本关于伊拉克战争的书。

(to have written 发生在 is said 所表示的时间之前)

(5) 不定式的被动式表示其逻辑主语为不定式动作的承受者。如:

It's a great honour to be invited to Mary's birthday party.

被邀请参加玛丽的生日聚会十分荣幸。 (作主语)

No harm seems to have been done.

似乎并没有造成损害。 (作表语)

I wish to be sent to work in the country.

我希望被派往乡下工作。 (作宾语)

In 1924 Nellie Taylor Ross of Wyoming became the first woman to be elected governor in the United States.

1924年,怀俄明州的内利?泰勒?罗斯成为美国第一位当选州长的妇女。(作定语)

I had to shout to be heard.

我大声呼喊以便能被听得见。 (作状语)

He did not like his intention to be laughed at.

他不喜欢他的意图被人取笑。(作宾语补足语)

3. 不定式复合结构

不定式可以与其逻辑主语一起构成不定式复合结构,其形式:for+名词/人称代词宾格+带 to 的不定式。其中的名词或人称代词宾格与不定式构成逻辑上的主谓关系。不定式复合结构的句法作用如下:

(1) 不定式复合结构作主语。如:

For a child to do that job is just inconceivable.

让一个孩子做这项工作真是不可思议。

For the goods to be packed in strong cases is necessary.

把货物包装在坚实的箱子里是必要的。

(2) 不定式复合结构作表语。如:

That is for you to decide.

那个由你决定。

A solution would be for shops to open at noon and close about 9 p.m..

办法是商店中午开门,晚9点关门。

These books are for children to read.

这些书是给孩子们读的。

- (3) 不定式复合结构作宾语。如:
- It's time for us to go. 我们该走了。

That would be a matter for the people to decide.

(4) 不定式复合结构作状语。

不定式复合结构作目的状语。如:

The gentleman stood aside for her to pass.

那位先生靠边站让她过去。

He opened the window (in order) for the fresh air to come in.

他打开窗户让新鲜空气进来。

4. 不定式的省略

如果句子前面已出现过同样的动词,为了避免重复,常省去不定式动词,只保留不定式符号 "to"。主要用在以下方面:

- (1) 在 hate, hope, like, love, mean, plan, try, want, wish 等动词以及 glad, pleased 形容词之后。 如:
- —Did you get a ticket?
- 一你买到票了吗?
- -No. I tried to. But there were not any left.
- 一没有。我去买过,但却卖完了。
- (2) 情态动词 ought to, used to, need 后。如:
- —Do you smoke? —Not now, but I used to.
- 一你抽烟吗? —现在不抽了,但过去常常抽的。

Why hurry? There's no need to.

急什么? 没有必要。

(3) 类似于助动词,情态动词的 be able to, be going to, have to 之后。如:

I wanted to go but I wasn' t able to.

我本想去的,但没能去。

- —Have you fed the cat? —No, but I' m just going to.
- 一你喂猫了吗? —没有,但我正要去喂。
- (4) 有时 to 可以省略, 也可以保留。如:

Royce may go if he likes (to).

罗伊斯如果想去也可以去。

动名词

动名词在句子中的成分

动名词(the Gerund)是非限定动词,由动词原形加词尾-ing 构成。它具有动词的特征与名词的特征,在各类应试中都是一项重要的测试内容。

1. 动名词 (短语)作主语

动名词(短语)作主语时通常位于句首。如:

Swimming is the best exercise in summer.

在夏天,游泳时最好的锻炼方式。

Living without an aim is like asiling without a compass.

生活没有目标就像航海没有指南针一样。

Eliminating problems by transferring the blame to others is often called looking for scapegoat.

通过把过错转嫁到别人身上把问题抹得一干干净,常常被称为寻找替罪羊。

注:动名词和不定式都可以作主语,一般可以互换,但有时又略有区别,动名词作主语往往表示一般或抽象的多次行为,不定式作主语往往表示 具体的或一次性的行为。如:

Playing with fire is dangerous. (泛指玩火)

To play with fire will be dangerous (指一具体动作)

Smoking is prohibited here .这里禁止抽烟。(抽象)

It is not very good for you to smoke so much.你抽这么多烟对你身体很不好。(具体)

但在 It is not use (good), not any use (good), useless 等后一般用动名词。如

It is no use arguing with him. 同他争论是无用的。

It is no good learning English without practice. 学英语不练是不行的。

如上所示, 当以 it 为形式主语时, 句中的表语常常为 no good, no use, fun 等名词, 形容词或介词短语。

2. 动名词 (短语)作表语

(1)动名词和不定式都可以作表语,但是略有区别:表示比较抽象的一般的行为是,多用动名词;表示某次具体的动作或具有将来时的意义时,多用不定式。如:

My job is teaching English.

我的工作是教英语。

My today's job is to teach you how t study English.

我今天的任务是教你如何学英语。

(2)动名词作表语时不可与进行时态相混淆。进行时态说明动作由主语完成的。动名词做表语,说明主语的性质或情况。试比较:

He is collecting stamps.

他在集邮。(现在进行时)

His hobby is collecting stamps.

他的爱好是集邮。(动名词)

3. 动名词 (短语)作动词宾语

(1)在某些动词后,只能用动名词(短语)而不能用不定式(短语)作宾语。常见的只能以动名词作宾语的动词有:

admit 承认	appreciate 感激	avoid 避免	consider 考虑
delay 耽误	deny 否认	endure 忍耐	enjoy 喜欢
escape 逃避	excuse 原谅	fancy 想象	finish 完成
forbid 严禁	imagine 想象	mind 介意	miss 错过

We' d better postpone discussing it till next week.

我们最好把这事推迟到下个星期讨论。

The girl avoided giving her any personal information.

这个女孩拒绝告诉她的任何个人情况。

(2)动名词 (短语)作短语动词的宾语。如:

She could't help thinking about the matter.

她不由自主地要想那件事。

Peter is fond of playing football

彼得喜欢踢足球。

The patient gave up smoking on medicine advice.

病人遵从医嘱,戒烟了

4. 动名词 (短语)作介词宾语

He is against dancing all night. 他反对通宵跳舞。

The college is a new type of college for training cadres.

这所大学是新型的培育干部的大学。

注:下面短语中的 "to" 是介词,而不是不定式符号,因此后面须接名词或动名词形式。

in addition to 除之外	admit to 承认	devote oneself to 献身于
be equal to 能胜任	be familiar to 对熟悉	find one's way to 设法到达
get down t 着手做	give way to 对让步	give one's mind to 专心于

5. 既可用动名词(短语)有可用不定式(短语)作宾语的动词

(1) 在下列动词后,作宾语的动名词通常可以和不定式换用,有些及物动词既可以跟动名词也可以跟不定式作宾语。如:

Attempt 试图	begin 开始	can't bear 忍不住
cease 停止	continue 继续	deserve 值得
hate 不喜欢	intend 打算	learn 学习

两者的区别不是很大,动名词所表示的动作,在意义上比较一般和抽象,时间观念不强,不指某一次动作;动名词不定式则常表示具体的动作, 有将来是的意思〉如:

The boy like playing football.

这些男孩喜欢踢足球。(经常性的动作)

Would you like to play football with us this Sunday?

这个周日愿意和我们一起踢足球吗?(一次的动作)

注:① 在以下两种情况下, begin 和 start 的后面只能跟不定式。

谓语动词 beigin 或 start 为进行时。如:

It's beginning /starting t orain .开始下雨了。(比较: It began/started raining / to rain.)

Begin 和 start 的宾语为没有进行时的静态动词。如:

- I began/started to understand his point of wiew.我开始理解他的观点了。
- ② 当 like 与 should / would 连用表示愿望或选择时,后面只能跟不定式。如
- I' d like to thank you again. 我愿意再次感谢你。
- I' d like to go to the cyber café to play games. 我想去网吧玩游戏。
- I' d like to come sometime. 日后我愿意来。
- ③ 当 prefer 与 would 连用表示选择时,后面只能跟不定式。如:

Would you prefer to live in the south or in the north?

你愿意住南方还是住在北方?

④ 虽然 continue 和 like 之后既可以跟动名词,有可以跟不定式,但是它们的反义词 discontinue 和 dislike 的宾语却只能是动名词。如: He discontinued running in the hot weather .在闷热的天气里,他中止了跑步。

The horse dislike wearing blinkers.那匹马不喜欢带眼罩。

(2) 在 forget, remember 和 regret 之后,动名词表示先于谓语动词发生的动作,不定式表示后与谓语动词发生的动作。如: I remember reading the book. 我记得读过这本书。(已做)

记得做过某事

I must remember to read the book.我必须记得去读这本书。 (未作)

记得去做某事。

The old lady forgot telling us the story and told us a second time.

那个老太太忘记给我们讲过这个故事,她又讲了一遍。(此事已做过或已发生。)

(忘记做过某事)

I forget to lock the door this morning.今天早晨我忘记锁门了。 (此事未做)

(忘记要去做某事)

(3) Mean 后面跟动名词时,作"表示,意味着"解,后面跟不定式时,作"打算'解。如:

Missing the train means waiting for another hour.

误了这趟火车意味着再等一个小时。(意味着)

I mean to come early today.

我打算今天早些来。(打算,有意要)

(4) try 后面跟动名词,作"试试看"解,表示已完成的动作或具有名词意义的概念性动作,后面跟不定式,作"试图"解,表示未完成的动作。如:

Why not try knocking at the back door, even if nobody hears you at the front door.

即使前门没人听到,为什么不试试敲敲后门。(实验,试一试某种方法)。

He' II try to improve his spoken English.

他设法提高他的英语口语。(努力,企图做某事)

(5) going on doing sth 作 "不停的做一件事"解, go on to do sth 作 "接着做另外一件事"解。如:

They went on working after dark.

天黑之后,他们继续工作。(继续原来没有做完的事情)

Afer finishing the letter, he went on to read a book.

写完信后,他接着读书。(继而去做另外一件事情)

(6) Stop 后面的动名词为宾语,不定式为目的状语。

Though they were all tired, they wouldn't stop working.

虽然他们都很累,但是他们也不肯停止工作。(停止正在或经常做的事)

After walking a long time, he stopped to have a rest.

走了好长一段时间之后,他停下来休息。(停止,中断某件事,目的是去做另外一件事)

(7) 在 need, require 和 want 后,主动语态的动名词表示被动意义,主动语态的不定式表示主动意义。如:

The house needs / requires / want repairing (=to be repaired)

房子需要修缮。

6. 动名词作定语

动名词作定语时不以短语的形式出现,而且总是位于所修饰的名词之前,表示它所修饰的名词的目的,用途或场合。如:

he teacher has many reading materials.

老师又很多阅读资料

A swimming pool was built on our college last year.

我们的大学去年修建了一个游泳池。

Our teacher uses a very good teching method.

我们教师的教学方法很好。

注:动名词作定语和现在分词作定语是有区别的。动名词作定语时,和它修饰的名词在逻辑上没有主谓关系,即它不是该名词发出的动作,只是表明所修饰名词的"目的""或用途"。现在分词作定语时则表明所修饰的词与分词有逻辑上的主谓关系。如:

- a sleeping car (=a car for sleeping) 卧车 (动名词作定语)
- a sleeping babay (=a baby who is sleeping) 睡觉的婴儿 (现在分词作定语)

常见的动名词作定语的例子还有:

a reading room 阅览室	drinking water 饮用水	a writing course 写作课
the getting—up bell 起床铃	living condition 生活条件	walking stick 手杖
fishing pole 钓鱼竿	bathing cap 游泳帽	dinning hall 餐厅

动名词的结构和形式

1. 动名词的否定结构

动名词的否定结构由 not 动名词组成。如:

Trying without success is better than not trying at all.

实验没有成功也比不实验好。

He hated himself for not having work hard.

他悔恨自己没有用功。

I' m sorry for not having telephoned you before.

很抱歉,没有早给你打电话。

He felt sorry for not having done the work well.

他为没有把工作做好感到难过。

I fancy it has done you a lot of good not going.

我看不去对你倒好了。(not going 是动名词一般式的否定形式)

There is no denying the fact that he si diligent. (no denying 也是动名词一般式的否定)

2. 动名词复合结构

通常情况下,动名词的逻辑主语为谓语动词的主语。如果动名词动作的发出者不失谓语动的主语时,则需要有自己的逻辑主语物主代词或名词所有格加动名词就构成了动名词的复合结构,这种结构在句中可以作主语,宾语等。

(1)逻辑主语是有生命的名词作主语时,必须用名词或代词所有格,作宾语时(尤其在口语中),也可用名词普通个或人称代词宾格。如:

Do you think my going there will be of any help?

你看我去会有什么帮助吗?(宾语)

The student's knowing English well helps him in learning French.

这位学生通晓英语对他学法语很有帮助。(主语)

Do you mind my(me) smoking?

你介意我抽烟吗?(宾语)

They insist on Mary's (Mary) going with them there.

他们坚持要玛丽跟他们一起去那儿。(介词宾语)

(2)逻辑主语是无生命名词是,通常只用名词普通格。如:

Do you hear the rain pattering on the roof?

你听见雨点打在屋顶上了吗?

Is there any hope of our team winning the match?

我们对赢得比赛有希望吗?

(3) 逻辑主语是指示代词或不定代词 this that , somebody , someone , nobody, none, anybody, anyone 时 , 只用普通格。如:

She was woken up by somebody shouting outside.

她被外面喊叫的人吵醒了。

3. 动名词的形式 (一般式,完成式和被动式)

(1) 动名词的一般式所表示的动作与谓语动词所表示的动作同时发生,或在谓语动词表示的动作之后。如:

We are very interested in collecting stamps.

我们对集邮很感兴趣。

His coming will be of great help to us.

他来对我们大有帮助。

但是有些明确表示时间的动词和介词 after, on,upon, 或 for 之后,常用一般式代替完成式,表示动作发生在谓语动作之前。如:

I shall never forget seeing the Great Wall for the first time.

我永远不会忘记第一次看到长城的情景。

On hearing that bad news, the mother couldn't help crying.

一听到这个糟糕的消息,母亲就禁不住哭了起来。

Excuse me for coming late.

我来晚了,请原谅。

Thank you for giving us so much help.

谢谢你给了我们这么多帮助。

(2) 动名词的完成式所表示的动作或状态在谓语动词之前完成或结束。

He regrets not having taken part in the work.

他后悔没有参加这项工作。

We were praised for having finished the work ahead of time.

我们因提前完成了这项工作而受到了表扬。

(3)动名词的被动式: 当动名词的逻辑主语是行为承受者时, 用被动语态。如:

I like being given harder work.

我喜欢接受难点的工作。

She is proud of being admitted into the university.

她为被大学录取而感到自豪。

The meeting was put off without his having been consulted.

会议延期并未和他商量。

He doesn' t mind having been criticized.

他不介意过去受到的批评。

现在分词

现在分词在句子中的成分

现在分词 (The Present Participle)是一种限定动词。它由动词原形加词尾-ing构成。现在分词有双重性,它一方面有动词的性质,可以有状语和宾语,另一方面又有形容词的性质,可以用作定语。现在分词在各类考试中都是一项重要的测试内容。

1. 现在分词(短语)作表语

(1) 分词作表语有两种情况,一种是现在分词作表语,一种是过去分词作表语,究竟是用现在分词还是用过去分词作表语是学生们经常困惑的地方。一般来说,表示心理状态的动词如 excite,interest 等都是及物动词,汉语意思不是"激动","高兴",而是"使激动"、"使高兴",因而现在分词应该是"令人激动的"、"令人高兴的",过去分词则是"感到激动的"和"感到高兴的"。所以,凡表示"令人……的"都是 - ing 形式,凡是表示"感到……"都用 - ed 形式。换句话说,若人对……感兴趣,就是 somebody is interested in…,若人/物本身有兴趣时,就是说 sb/sth is interesting。这类词常见的有:

interesting 使人感到高兴 — interested 感到高兴的

exciting 令人激动的— excited 感到激动的

delighting 令人高兴的— delighted 感到高兴的

disappointing 令人失望的— disappointed 感到失望的

encouraging 令人鼓舞的— encouraged 感到鼓舞的

pleasing 令人愉快的— pleased 感到愉快的

puzzling 令人费解的— puzzled 感到费解的

satisfying 令人满意的— satisfied 感到满意的

surprising 令人惊异的— surpsried 感到惊异的

worring 令人担心的—worrred 感到担心的

如:

Traveling is interesting but tiring.

旅行是有趣的,但是使人疲劳

The pupils will get confused if they are made to learn too much.

如果让学生学得太多,他们会感到糊涂的。

The argument is very convincing.

他的论点很令人信服。

They were very excited at the news.

听到这个消息,他们非常激动。

(2) 分词作表语时,相当于形容词,不可与构成进行时态和被动语态中的分词混淆起来。它们的形式是一样但可以从意义上予以区别。试比较:

The film is moving.

这电影很感人。(表语,说明主语的性质)

They are moving next Sunday .

他们下个周日搬家。(现在进行时,表示动作)

The bookstore is now closed.

书店现在已关门了。(表语,说明主语所处的状态)

The bookstore is usually closed at 7:30 p.m..

书店通常在下午7:30关门。(被动语态,表示动作)

2. 现在分词 (短语)作定语

(1) 单个的现在分词作定语时通常前置。如:

I' m reading an interesting novel.

我在读一本非常有趣的小说。

She is a charming child.

她是一个招人喜爱的孩子。

One of the delegates asked an embarrassing question.

其中有位代表提了一个令人难堪的问题。

This is a pressing question. 这是一个紧迫的问题。

(2) 现在分词短语作定语时通常后置,相当于一个定语从句。如:

Most of the young teachers working in the university are Ph.D. .

在这所大学工作的大多数年轻教师都是博士。 (working = who working in this university)

Do you know the number of people coming to the party?

你知道来参加晚会的人数吗? (coming=who will come)

The man speaking to us the other day has gone to Japan.

那天同我们讲话的那个人到日本去了。(speaking=who spoke)

3. 现在分词 (短语)作状语

(1) 现在分词 (短语)作时间状语

Walking along the street one day, sha saw a little girl running up to her.

(=when she was walking along the street one day .)

有一天当她正沿着大街向前走时,她看见一个小女孩朝她跑了过来。

While crossing the street, you must be careful.

当你横过马路时,一定要小心。

(=while you cross the street.)

现在分词 (短语) 强调与谓语动词的动作同时发生时,前面可带 when, while, after, before, since 等从属连词。如:

When visiting a strange city, I like to have a guide-book with me.

游览陌生城市时,我喜欢随身带着导游手册。

While flying over the Channel, the pilot saw what he thought to be a meteorite.

飞过英吉利海峡时,驾驶员认为他看见了一颗陨星。

(2) Having no place to go to, the man wandered about in the street.

由于没有要去的地方,那个男人只好在街上徘徊。

Being ill, he didn't go to school yesterday.

他由于病了,昨天就没有去上学。? (=because he was ill)

Living in the country, we had few social engagements.

(=Because we were living in the country)

我们住在乡村,交际的机会很少。

Seeing that it was raining, George put on his mackintosh.

鉴于下雨,乔治穿上了雨衣。(seeing that 是一个原因的固定说法)

(3)现在分词 (短语) 作结果状语

Jane fell off the bike, cutting her leg.

简从自行车上摔下,划破了腿。

It rained heavily, causing severe flooding in that country.

大雨滂沱,造成了那个国家洪水泛滥。

(4) 现在分词 (短语)作条件状语

Working hard, you will succeed.

努力工作, 你就会成功。

Standing on the building ,you can see the whole city.

站在那座楼上,你会看到整个城市。

(5) 现在分词 (短语) 作让步状语

Such committees, being evenly balanced, almost never succeed in making unequivocal judgements.

这种委员会虽然代表性很均衡,但几乎从未做出十分明确的决断。

Although living miles away, he got around to visiting her.

尽管住在几英里以外,他还是去看她了。

While not being optimistic, I have not given up all hope.

虽然不乐观,但是我还没有放弃一切希望。

(6) 现在分词 (短语)作方式状语

She came running back to tell usthe news

她跑着回来告诉我们这个消息。

Mary stood at the school gate wating for Betty.

玛丽站在校门口等贝蒂。

She looked out of the window, as though thinking.

她向窗外望去,似乎在思考。

(7) 现在分词 (短语) 作伴随状语

His wife came into the house carrying a bundle of clothes.

他妻子拿着一包衣服走进屋内。

Raymond entered college at the age of eighteen, graduating four years later at the head of his class.

雷蒙德 18 岁上大学, 4 年之后毕业时名列前茅。

- (8) 现在分词 (短语) 在某些固定结构中作状语
- ① 现在分词 (短语)在 spend time / money / energy doing 中作状语。如:

I wish you wouldn' t spend so much time watching television.

我希望你不要花这么多时间看电视。

He spends a lot of money entertaining his friends.

他花很多钱款待朋友。

The secretary spent his energy organizing the rally.

秘书为大会的组织工作用尽了力气。

② 现在分词 (短语) 在 (be) busy doing 中作状语。如:

The workers were busy unloading carts.

工人们忙着卸车。

He was busy packing.

他正忙着收拾行装。

③ 现在分词 (短语) 在 have difficulty/trouble/a difficult time doing 中作状语。如:

The boy had little difficulty learning mathematics.

那男孩学数学没有什么困难。

The two friends had a hard time getting here.

两位朋友到这里来一路辛苦。

At first she had a little trouble following the lectures.

起初她上课听讲有点困难。

④ 现在分词 (短语)在 keep doing 中作状语。如:

Why do you keep saying that?

你为什么老说那件事?

⑤ 现在分词 (短语)在 go doing 中作状语。如:

He often goes running.

他经常跑步。

4. 现在分词 (短语)作宾语补足语

(1)现在分词 (短语) 在感官动词 feel , hear , notice , observe , perceive , see , smell , watch , listen to , look at 等之后作宾补。如: I saw the naughty boy hitting the dog.

我看见那个顽皮孩子打狗。

One could hear her singing as she ran upstairs.

你可以听到她边唱歌边跑上楼。

We found him waiting to receive us.

我们发现他等着欢迎我们。

Many people observed the ship leaving the harbor.

许多人看到船驶离了港口。

(2) 现在分词 (短语) 在使役动词 get , have 及 bring(致使) , keep(使) , leave (使) , send(使) , set (使开始) , start (使开始) 等之后作 宾补。如:

The doctor will soon have you walking about again.

医生将很快地使你能再走动。(have 在此表示允诺)

I won't have you shouting at me the way.

我不容许你这样对我喊叫。(have 在此用于不允许)

The children kept the fire burning all the time.

孩子使火一直燃烧着。

(3) 现在分词 (短语) 在其他动词 catch, detect, discover, find, want 等之后作宾补。如:

The manager caught me smoking in the office again.

经理又抓住我在办公室抽烟了。

We don't want you becoming too confident.

我不希望你变得太自信。

I found her reading in bed.

我发现她在床上看书。

现在分词的结构和时态

1. 现在分词独立结构

现在分词可有其独立的逻辑主语。这种主语常常是名词或代词主语,置于现在分词之前,二者构成一种分词独立结构。现在分词独立结构常用作状语,置于句首或句末,偶尔也置于句中。分句独立结构多用在书面语中。

(1) 表时间。如:

The bell ringing, the children all stopped talking.

铃声一响,孩子们都不说话了。

The dark clouds having dispersed, the sun shone again.

乌云已散去,太阳又普照大地了。

The question being settled , we went home.

问题解决之后,我们就回家了。

(2) 表原因。如:

It being a holiday, I went fishing.

那天放假,我钓鱼去了。

The night being dark, she was afraid to go there.

天黑,她不敢去那儿。

The river having risen in the night, the crossing was impossible.

夜里河水上涨,渡河不可能了。

(3) 表条件。如:

Weather permiting, we' Il have an outing tomorrow.

要是天气许可的话,我们明天就去郊游。

Other things being equal, I would buy the black dress not the white one.

其他方面若都相同, 我将买那件黑的衣服, 不买那件白的。

(4) 表方式或伴随情况。如:

The teacher came in, his hand carring a book.

老师手中拿着书进来了。

Their room was on the third floor, its window overlooking the sportsground.

他们的房间在三层楼上,窗户俯视着操场。

He guiding her, they stumbled through the street.

他引着她,两个人蹒跚着穿过那条街。

(5) 现在分词独立结构有时可由介词 with 或 without 引导。如:

She came without anyone accompanying her.

她来了,没有任何人陪着她。

2. 现在分词的否定结构

现在分词的否定式由 "not+现在分词"构成。如:

Not knowing where to go, she went to the police for help.

她不知道该往哪儿走,就去请警察帮助。(现在分词一般式的否定结构)

Not seeing John, I asked where he was.

我看不见约翰,于是问他在何处。(现在分词一般式的否定结构)

Not being seen by anyone, the thief escaped.

那个贼趁无人看见时逃跑了。(现在分词被动式的否定结构)

Not having done it right, I tried again.

我由于没有做对,所以又试了试。(现在分词完成式的否定结构)

3. 现在分词的一般式

(1) 现在分词的一般式通常表示其动作与谓语动词的动作同时发生。如:

She sat there reading a novel.

她坐在那里看小说。

A little child learning to walk often falls.

学走路的小孩常常跌跤。

(2) 现在分词的一般式所表示的动作有时在谓语动词的动作之前发生。如:

Going into the room, he shut the door.

走进房间,他就关上了门。

4. 现在分词的完成式

现在分词的完成式表示其动作在谓语动词的动作之前完成。

Having finished her homework, the little girl began to watch TV.

做完作业后,这个小女孩开始看电视。

Haning lived in Beijing for many years, Carter knew the city well.

因为在北京住了多年,卡特对这个城市很熟悉。

5. 现在分词的被动式

现在分词的被动式表示其逻辑主语为现在分词动作的承受者。

(1) 现在分词的一般被动式。如:

The building being built is our library.

正在建的那栋楼是我们的图书馆。

The question being discussed is of great importance.

正在讨论的问题非常重要。

(2) 现在分词的完成被动式。如:

Having been warned by the teacher, the students didn't make such mistakes.

老师警告他们之后,学生们不再犯这样的错误了。

Having been told many times, he still did not know how to do it.

(人家)已经告诉他多少次了,他还是不知道怎么做。

6. 垂悬现在分词

现在分词作状语时,其逻辑主语应该与句子的主语一致,但有时现在分词的主语与其所在句中的主语并不一致,这种现在分词即所谓的垂悬现在分词。垂悬现在分词容易使句意模糊,甚至造成歧义,因而通常被认为是不合规范或错误的用法。

Searching along the deck, it had taken him some time to find a doctor.

他沿着甲板找了好久才找到一名医生。(searching 的逻辑主语是句中的 him)

Walking or sleeping, this subject was always in my mind.

不论是走路或睡觉,我总是在想着这个问题。

(walking or sleeping 的逻辑主语是句中的 my)

过去分词

过去分词在句子中的成分

过去分词(The Past Participle)是一种非限定动词。它通常由动词原形加-ed 构成,少数不规则动词的过去分词为不规则形式。过去分词一般只有一种形式,但是有的不规则动词的过去分词有两种形式。在各类应试中,过去分词都是一项重要的测试内容。

1. 过去分词 (短语)作表语

The traverllers were completely exhausted.

游客完全筋疲力尽了。

The scientists were excited about the result of the experiment.

科学家们对实验结果感到很兴奋。

Never touch an electric wire when it is broken.

绝不要动断了的电线。

We are determined to build a reservoir here in the shortest possible time.

我们决心尽快地在这里建一水库。

I am convinced of his honesty.

我深信他的诚实。

Are you satisfied that I am telling the truth?

你相信我说的是实话吗?

2.过去分词 (短语)作定语

(1) 单个的过去分词作定语时通常前置。及物动词的过去分词具有被动和完成意义。如:

the unexpected loss 意外损失	planned economy 计划经济
a complicated problem 复杂问题	changed conditions 改变了的情况
armed forces 武装部队	canned food 罐装食品
stricken area 灾区	a delighted look 高兴的神色

(2) 不及物动词的过去分词具有主动和完成意义。如:

fallen leaves 落叶	faded flowers 凋谢的花
newly arrived goods 新到的商品	the exploded bomb 已爆炸了的炸弹
the risen sun 升起的太阳	departed friends 离去的朋友
an escaped prisoners 逃犯	a retired teacher 退休教师
retured students 归国留学生	an expired passports 过期护照

(3) 过去分词短语作定语时通常后置,其意义相当于一个定语从句,但比从句简洁,多用于书面语。如:

The concert given by the symphony was a great success.

该交响乐团举行的音乐会大为成功。

A drop of water seen through microscope is filled with living things.

通过显微镜能看到一滴水里充满了各种生物。

(4)以"名词+过去分词"或"副词+过去分词"组成的复合形容词作前置定语。如:

state-owned enterprises 国有企业

a poverty-stricken plac e 贫穷的地方

quick-frozen food 速冻食品

a much-needed reform 急需进行的改革

3. 过去分词 (短语)作状语

(1) 过去分词 (短语)作时间状语 Seen under a microscope, a fresh snowflake has a delicate six-pointed shape.

在显微镜下观察,刚飘下的雪花呈精巧的六角形。

(=when it is seen under the microscope)

When heated, ice will be changed into water.

当冰受热时,它就会变成水。

(=when it is heated)

(2) 过去分词 (短语)作原因状语

Many of us, being so excited ,could not go to sleep that night

我们很多人是那样的激动,那天晚上都没有睡着。

(=because we were so excited)

Born and bred in the countryside, sister Carrie was bewildered by the big city.

嘉莉妹妹生长在乡下,对这座大城市感到迷惑。

Gone from home so long, they joyously embraced their mates of boyhood.

他们久离家乡,高兴地拥抱他们的儿时伙伴。

Raised in an atmosphere of love, Shaw is always willing to help others.

肖在充满了爱的环境中长大,所以他总是愿意帮助别人。

(3) 过去分词 (短语) 作条件状语

Some metropolitan newspapers would make sizable volumes if printed in book form.

如果印成书的形式,有些大城市的报纸的销量会相当可观。

Seen in this light, the matter is not as serious as people generally suppose.

从这个角度看,问题并不像人们一般料想的那样严重。

Given better attention, the cabbages could grow even faster.

白菜照管得好会生长得更快。

Considered from this point, the question is of great importance.

从这一点看,这个问题很重要。

(4) 过去分词 (短语) 作让步状语

Mocked at by everybody, he had my sympathy.

人人都嘲笑他,但我却同情他。

Left to his own devices, Charles did not relax his efforts.

查尔斯虽孤立无援,但他并没有放松自己的努力。

Although exhausted by the climb, he continued his journey.

他虽然爬得很累,但他仍继续前进。

(5) 过去分词 (短语)作方式状语

I finished the work as requested.

我按要求完成了工作。

As scheduled, the two friends met on May 10.

根据安排,两个朋友于5月10日见了面。

That fellow was walking with a limp as if injured.

那家伙一瘸一拐地走着,似乎受了伤。

但要注意:过去分词(短语)作方式状语时,前面通常带有 as, as if 等从属连词,此时可视为省略的让步状语从句。

(6) 过去分词 (短语) 作伴随状语

Found in all parts of the state, pines are the most common trees in Georgia.

松树在佐治亚州随处可见,是该州最普通的树木。

He went to work , burdened with worries.

他心事重重地上班去了。

The headmaster went into the lab, followed by the foreign guests

校长走进了实验室,后面跟着外宾。

过去分词的结构

1. 过去分词独立结构

过去分词有时可有其独立主语,二者构成一种独立分词结构。过去分词独立结构多用于书面语中,常用作状语,用来表示时间、条件、原因、伴随情况等。如:

He rushed into the room , his face covered with sweat.

他满脸是汗跑进屋来。(表伴随)

This done, we went home.

做完此事,我们就回家了。(表时间)

All our savings gone , the couple started looking for jobs.

积蓄全部用完了,这对夫妻就开始找工作。(表原因)

That point settled, the speaker went on to the next one.

那个问题讲完了,演讲人继续讲下一个问题。(表时间)

2. with/without+宾语+过去分词表示伴随情况的独立结构

With everything taken into consideration, we all think this is a very good plan.

每件事都考虑到了,我们都认为这是一项不错的计划。

With different methods used, different results are obtained.

采用不同的方法,得到不同的结果。

She went angrily away without a word spoken.

她一个字也没说,就生气地走了。

3. 过去分词 (短语)作宾语补足语

(1) 过去分词 (短语) 在感官动词和使役动词等之后作宾语补足语,这些词语有:

have 让 , 使	keep 使处于某状态	get 使得
see 看见	hear 听见	find 发现
feel 感觉到	leave 使处于某状态	make 使
want 想要	start 引起	notice 注意
observe 观察	watch 注视	set 使处于某状态

如:

The work left him exhausted.

这个活使得他筋疲力尽。

The doorkeeper heard the chain and bolts withdrawn.

看门人听见门上的链和拴被拉开了。

The tenant found the house renovated.

房客看到房子已整修过了。

It's better to leave some things unsaid.

有些事倒是不说的好。

I don't want my name linked with him.

我不要把我的名字和他联系在一起。

The person concerned should like this matter settled immediately.

当事人希望此事立刻得到解决。

(2)过去分词 (短语) 在使役动词 get 或 have 之后作宾语补足语,表示的动作往往是由别人完成的。如:

I had my car repaired

我把我的车修好了。(别人修的)

I had my hair cut

我理发了。(别人给我理的)

We must get the television set repaired

我们必须把电视机修好。(被别人修)

He had his window broken to pieces.

他的窗户给打破了。(被他人打破)

形容词和副词

形容词的功用

形容词(The Adjective)和副词(The Adverb)是英语语法的重要组成部分,也是四、六级考试,研究生入学考试等各类考试中的一项重要测试内容。有关形容词和副词的试题主要涉及以下内容。

- 1. 形容词和副词的误用;
- 2. 形容词和副词的词序;
- 3. 某些在词义上容易混淆的形容词和副词;
- 4. 有关形容词和副词比较级用法的问题;
- 5. 形容词或副词与其他词所组成的固定搭配。

1. 形容词的功用

(1). 作前置或后置定语

A good boy must behave himself.

好孩子应当行为规矩。

The old man was too feeble to take his usual daily stroll.

这个老人太虚弱,已不能像平常那样每天散步了。

This is the only solution possible.

这是唯一可能的解决办法。

(2). 作表语

That's excellent! 那太好了!

I was alone in the house. 我一个人在那栋房子里。

He is ill. 他病了。

(3). 作补语

①.作主语补语。

He was born rich. 他生来富贵。

The room was found empty. 房间发现是空的。

②.作宾语补语。

The good news made him happy.

这个消息使他很高兴。

Have you got everything ready for the journey?

你准备好行装没有?

③.作主语或补语。

用于"定冠词+形容词"结构中,起名词作用。

The rich are not always happy

富人未必总幸福

There are lack of communication betweent the young and the old.

青年人和老年人之间缺乏沟通。

④.作状语。

The tenant pays her rent regularly.

房客定期付租金。

You' d better drink the tea hot.

你最好趁热喝茶。

If necessary,I' II go instead of you.

如果有必要,我替你去。

⑤.作独立成分。

Strange to say, he is still ignorant of it.

说也奇怪,他还不知道这件事。

I said it would happen, and sure enough it did happen.

我说它会发生,它果然发生了。

Most remarkable of all , he never suffers from nerves on the stage.

最了不起的是他从不怯场。

2.前置形容词的排列顺序

有时两个或多个形容词同时修饰一个名词,此时,名词前面形容词的排序是:

限定词—描绘性形容词—尺寸大小—形状—年龄、新旧—颜色—国籍—材料—质地材料—中心名词。如:

- a famous ancient Chinese poet.
- 一位中国古代的著名诗人 a beautiful ,big, old, red., Chinese wooden table.
- 一张又大又漂亮的红色的、中国式的旧木桌

an attractive little old yellow book.

- 一本外观很精致、发黄了的旧书
- a large round wooden table.
- 一张大圆木桌
- a small black plastic bag
- 一个黑色小塑料袋

the first beautiful little white Chinese stone bridge.

第一座美丽的中国小型白色石桥

- a very valuable Egyptian bronze cat.
- 一只非常珍贵的埃及铜猫

3. 名词化的形容词

有些形容词可以和定冠词连用,表示一类人或物,这时它近似一个名词。用作名词的形容词叫做名词化的形容词。名词化的形容词常与定冠词连用,可在句中承担某种句子成分。

名词化的形容词可表示下列意义:

(1).泛指一类人,作主语时要求复数动词。如:

They' re going to build a school for the deaf and the blind .

他们准备给聋人和盲人盖一所学校。

All the rich are not happy.

富人并不都快乐。

The sick were sent home.

病员被送回家。

(2).指抽象事物,作主语时要求单数动词。如:

The beautiful can never die.

美是不朽的。

(3).名词化形容词可加复数词尾 - s。如:

One of the locals told me how to go to the station .

有个当地人告诉我去车站怎么走。

We' II take our finals next week.

我们下星期举行期末考试。

4. 复合形容词

复合形容词是指由两个或两个以上的词构成的形容词。复合形容词主要有以下几种构成方式。

(1).名词+形容词。如:

Duty-free 免税的 home-sick 想家的 heart-sick 垂头丧气的

(2).名词+现在分词。如:

labor-saving 省工的;节省劳动力的 mouth-watering 令人垂涎的

(3).名词+过去分词。如:

weather-beaten 饱经风霜的 sugar-coated 涂有糖衣的 hearted-felt 由衷的

(4).形容词+现在分词。如:

good-looking 好看的 easy-going 随和的

(5).形容词+ 名词。如:

large-scale 大规模的

high-class 高级的

(6).形容词+ 名词+ -ed。如:

absent-minded 心不在焉的 whole-hearted 全心全意的 good-tempered 好脾气的

(7).形容词+ 形容词。如:

icy-cold 冰冷的 red-hot 炽热的

(8).副词+现在分词。如:

far-seeing 目光远大的 hard-working 努力工作的 far-reaching 深远的

(9).副词+过去分词。如:

well-informed 消息灵通的 wide-spread 遍布的, 大面积的 well-known 著名的

(10).由短语构成的形容词。如:

hard-to-please 难以取悦的 life-and death 生死存亡的

happy-go-lucky 无忧无虑的 out-and-out 彻头彻尾的 face-to-face 面对面的

副词的功用

1. 句子副词

句子副词不是修饰句子的某一个成分,而是表示说话人对自己所说的话的态度。句子副词通常位于句首,其后通常有逗号。句子副词可以分为以下三类:

(1).表示说话人说话时的态度。如:

Frankly,I look upon it as a very promising experiment.

坦白地说,我把它看作是一次很有希望的实验。

Personally, I see no objection to your leaving at once.

就我个人而言,我不反对你马上就走。

(2).表示说话人对某一动作或情况可能性的评论。如:

Perhaps they are in need of our help.

也许他们需要我们的帮助。

Clearly you are right.显然你是对的。

(3).表示说话人对某一动作或情况的反应。如:

Fortunately, no one was hurt.

幸亏没有人受伤。

Naturally, he was lying.

他当然是在撒谎。

2. 连词副词

连词副词用以连接一个句子或从句与另一个句子或从句,根据意义,连接副词可分为以下几类:

(1).表示列举和补充。如:

The task is very difficult; besides, time presses.

任务艰巨,而且时间紧迫。

The house is too small, and furthermore, it? It's too far from the city.

房子太小,而且离城太远。

(2).表示转换话题。如:

The airlines charge half-price for the students.Incidentally,I' ve already bought my

ticket to New York.

航空公司对学生收半价。顺便说一句,我已经买了去纽约的机票。

(3).表示结果。如:

The weather has changed suddenly, and we must alter our plans for our travel accordingly.

天气突然变了,因而我们必须改变出行计划。

Catherine was a bright and eager student, and consequently, did well in school.

凯瑟琳是个聪明好学的学生,因此学习成绩很好。

(4).表示否定的条件。如:

You'd better go now,otherwise you'll miss your train.

你最好现在就走,要不然就赶不上火车了。

He cannot be in his right senses else he would not make such wild statements.

他肯定神智不清,要不然就不会作出这样狂妄的声明了。

(5).表示让步。如:

I am coming anyway,no matter what others say.

不管旁人怎么说,反正我准来。

However much advice you give him,he does exactly what he wants.

不管你给他多少劝告,他还是我行我素。

(6).表示总结。如:

Altogether, our achievements are very great. 总的说来,我们的成绩是很大的。

Altogether the teacher is satisfied. 总的说来,老师是满意的。

(7).表示对比。如:

Would you like to have a meeting about the matter this afternoon? Alternatively, we could discuss it at dinner.

你愿意今天下午开会讨论这件事吗?要不,我们可在吃晚饭时讨论。

3. 形容词和副词的比较等级

- (1) 形容词比较级和最高级的构成
- ①.规则变化:

有些形容词的比较级和最高级可采用在词尾加 - er 和 - est 的形式,也可采用在单词前加 more 和 most 的形式,这类形容词有: clear, common, cruel, free, handsome, lively, often, pleasant, polite, pretty, quiet, secure, solid, stupid, timid, wicked 等。

②.不规则变化

原级	比较级	最高级
good well	better	best

many much	more	most
late	later latter	latest last
little	less	least

(2).副词比较级和最高级的构成

①.规则变化

单音节词及少数双音节词在词尾加 - er 构成比较级 , 加 - est 构成最高级。如:

hard - harder - hardest soon - sooner - soonest fast - faster - fastest slow - slower - slowest

early - earier - earliest

大多数副词是在其原形前加 more 构成比较级,加 most 构成最高级,副词的最高级前可以加定冠词 the,也可不加。

如:

quickymore quicklymost quicklycarefullymore carefullymost carefullyfluentlymore fluentlymost fluently

②.不规则变化

原级	比较级	最高级
well	better	best
little	less	least
badly	worse	worst
much	more	most

(3).形容词和副词比较等级的用法

形容词的比较级结构用来描述两种事物或人在性质、大小、高低等方面的差别。形容词的比较级的基本结构主要有:

①.形容词的比较级 + than。如: Real friendship is more valuable than money. 真正的友谊比金钱更有价值

This lesson is easier than the last one. 这课比上一课容易。

Illustration by example is sometimes better than explanation in words .

举例说明有时比用词语解释好。

②.形容词比较级 + 名词 + than。如:

The professor knows more archaeology than most people.

在考古方面这位教授比大多数人知道得多。

I did more work in two hours than he had done all day.

我两小时干的活比他一整天干的活都多。

③.less +形容词原级+than。如:

Martin is less diligent than his sister.

马丁不如他姐姐用功。

④.less/fewer +形容词原级+名词+than。如:

Nancy made fewer spelling mistakes than befor .

南希现在的拼写错误比以前少了。

He had less money than he had before.

他现在的钱比以前少了。

If children were fed nourishing breakfast before they left for school, there would be fewer problems in the early morning classes。如果孩子在上学前吃了有营养的早餐,那么在早晨课堂上发生的问题就会少些。

Why there is less traffic on the streets in February than in May.

为什么二月份街上的车辆要比五月份少?

⑤.the +形容词比较级+the +形容词比较级。如:

The more medicine I take, the worse I seem to feet.

越吃药我感觉似乎越糟。

The higher, the colder,

越高越冷。

The more learned a man is, the more modest he usually is.

一个人越有学问,他通常会越谦虚。

(4).形容词最高级的基本结构

形容词的最高级表示在一定范围内某类事或某人在性质、高低和大小等方面程度最高或最低。形容词最高级的基本结构为:the + 形容词最高级 + 比较范围(如介词 of 或 in 的短语或 that 从句)。如:

He is the tallest boy in his class. 他是他们班上最高的男孩。

This is the best of all. 这是所有中最好的。

This is the most interesting film that I have seen.

这是我所看过的电影中最有趣的一部。

(5).副词的比较级结构

①.as+副词原级+as。这一结构表示两个事物或两个人之间的相同或相似。如:

Miller runs as fast as I.

米勒和我跑得一样快。

He speaks English as fluently as an Englishman.

他的英语说得和英国人一样流利。

②.其否定形式为: not so/as+副词原级+as

Usually adults don't learn a foreigh languages as quickly as children. 通常成人学外语不如小孩快。

③.as+副词原级+as possible。这一结构表示尽可能地做某事。

He said he would write to me as soon as possible.

他说他会尽快给我写信。

④.副词比较级 + than . . . 。这一结构表示一个事物或人比另一事物或人在某方面强。

She works harder than his brother does.

她比她弟弟学习努力。

Tom swims faster than I do.汤姆比我游得快。

She goes shopping less frequently than she used to .

她不像以前那样经常购物了。

⑤.the +副词比较级 . . . , the +副词比较级 。这一结构表示前者越 , 后者越 。如:

The more, the better.

越多越好。

The more you read, the more knowledge you will get.你读书越多,获取的知识就越多。

(6).副词最高级 + 表示范围的结构

表示范围的结构通常为含有介词 in ,of 或 among 的介词短语。副词最高级前的定冠词通常都会省略。如:

He runs (the) fastest in his class.

他是班里跑得最快的。

He works (the) hardest among the ten boys.

在这十个男孩中他学习最努力。

Of all his poems, I like this one best.

在他所有的诗中,我最喜欢这一首。

但要注意:在副词最高级前,可以不用 the。

形容词和副词的比较级

1. 形容词或副词比较级的修饰语

(1).用于形容词或副词原级比较结构前的词语有: exactly, just, nearly, almost, hardly, twice, three times 等。

exactly/just as big as

与......正好一样大

almost/nearly as wide as

与......几乎一样宽

twice as many as

是.....数量的两倍

three times as long as

是......长度的三倍

(2).修饰形容词或副词最高级的词语有: by far, the second, the third 等。

by far the finest weather

最好的天气

the third largest company

第三大公司

2. 形容词的原级或比较级表示最高级的意义

用形容词的原级或比较级也可表示最高级的意义,其结构为:

(1).否定词语 + so/as + 形容词原级 + as。如:

No boy is so brave as Tom Iin his class.

在班里没有哪个男孩比汤姆更勇敢。

(2).否定词语+形容词比较级+than。如:

Nothing is more exciting than to travel.

没有什么比去旅游更令人兴奋。

(3).the +形容词比较级+than+any other +单数名词/all the other +复数名词。如:

The technique is more than the other three.

这种技术比任何其他方法都有效。

This plan is nicer than the other three

这个计划比其他三个都好。

注:大多数形容词是可分等级的,其等级性是通过比较级和最高级表现出来的。但有些形容词没有等级,不具有等级性的形容词主要是一些从名词派生的形容词。如:atomic,tidal,earthen,mothly, weekly 等。

- 一些表示起源的词。如:British, English, original 等;
- 一些表示绝对意义的形容词。如:dead, living, blind, lame, square, wrong 等;
- 一些表示时间、方位和方向的形容词。如:daily,present, front, east, middle, central 等;
- 一些本身表示极限性质的形容词。如:absolute, perfect, excellent, maximal, wonderful, unique等。

3. 具有特殊意义的比较结构

(1).more+形容词/名词+than "(与其说......不如说......")。如:

He is more brave than wise.

他有勇无谋。

Success in language is more a matter of application than of intelligence.

语言上的成功与其说是一个智力的问题不如说是个运用的问题。

(2).no more...than (只)。如:

It's no more than a false alarm.

那只是虚惊一场。

He is no more than a puppet.

他只是个傀儡罢了。

(3).not more than (最多)。如:

He is not more than twenty years old.

他最多有二十岁。

I have not more than five dollars with me.

我身上最多有五美元。

(4).no less than (多达.....)。如:

He stayed there for no less than two months

他在那儿呆了两个月之久。

There were no less than fifty wounded.

受伤者多达50人。

(5).not less than (多于,至少)。如:

He gave her not less than one thousand dollars

他至少给了她一干美元。

Not less than 300 people attended the conference.

至少有三百人出席了会议。

(6).no less . . . than (和.....一样)。如:

He is no less diligent than you.

他和你一样勤奋。

Mary is no less active than she used to be.

玛丽和从前一样活跃。

(7).not less . . . than (也许比.....更.....)。如:

He is not less rich than his brother . .

他也许比他哥哥富有。

She is not less busy than you.

他也许比你更忙。

(8).not so much . . . as . . . (与其说......不如说......)。如:

She is not so much an actress as a singer.

与其说她是个演员,不如说她是个歌手。

I do not feel so much angry as sad.

与其说我感到生气,不如说我感到伤心。

(9).as much...as... 同.....一样, 跟.....到同一程度。如:

It is as much your responsibility as yours.

这是你们的责任,同样也是我们的责任。

I have experienced as much pain as pleasure.

我经历的痛苦和欢乐一样多。

(10).much less / still less 用于否定句之后,意思是"更不用说,更何况"。如:

She wouldn't take a drink, much less stay for dinner.

她连饮料都不愿喝一口,更别提留下吃饭了。

French is not the private property of Frenchmen, and still less is English the private property of Englishmen.

法语不是法国人的私有财产,英语就更不成其为英国人的私有财产了。

介词

介词的种类、短语及搭配

介词 (The Preposition)又叫做前置词,通常置于名词之前。它是一种虚词,不需要重读,在句中不单独作任何句子成分,只表示其后的名词或相当于名词的词语与其他句子成分的关系。中国学生在使用英语进行书面或口头表达时,往往会出现遗漏介词或误用介词的错误,因此各类考试语法的结构部分均有这方面的测试内容。

1. 介词的种类

英语中最常用的介词,按照不同的分类标准可分为以下几类:

- (1). 简单介词、复合介词和短语介词
- ①.简单介词是指单一介词。如:
- at, in, of, by, about, for, from, except, since, near, with 等。
- ②. 复合介词是指由两个简单介词组成的介词。如:

Inside, outside, onto, into, throughout, without, as to as for, unpon, except for 等。

③. 短语介词是指由短语构成的介词。如:

In front of, by means o f, on behalf of, in spite of, by way of, in favor of, in regard to 等。

- (2). 按词义分类
- {1} 表地点(包括动向)的介词。如:

About ,above, across, after, along , among, around , at, before, behind, below, beneath, beside, between , beyond ,by, down, from, in, into , near, off, on, over, through, throught, to, towards,, under, up, unpon, with, within , without 等。

{2}表时间的介词。如:

About, after, around, as, at, before, behind, between, by, during, for, from, in, into, of, on, over, past, since, through, throughout, till(until), to, towards, within 等。

{3} 表除去的介词。如:

beside, but, except 等。

{4} 表比较的介词。如:

As, like, above, over 等。

{5} 表反对的介词。如:

againt ,with 等。

{6} 表原因、目的的介词。如:

for, with, from 等。

{7} 表结果的介词。如:

to, with, without 等。

{8} 表手段、方式的介词。如:

by, in ,with 等。

{9}表所属的介词。如:

of, with 等。

{10} 表条件的介词。如:

on, without, considering 等。

{11} 表让步的介词。如:

despite, in spite notwithstanding 等。

{12} 表关于的介词。如:

About, concerning, regarding ,with regard to, as for , as to

{13} 表对于的介词。如:

to, for over, at, with 等。

{14} 表根据的介词。如:

on, according to 等。

{15} 表其他的介词。如:

for(赞成), without (没有)等。

2. 介词短语

(1).介词短语的构成 介词之后出现的名词、代词或其他相当于名词的结构、短语或从句叫介词宾语。介词短语是指介词和介词宾语构成的短语。 介词短语的构成主要有下面的形式:

{1}介词+名词。如:

The headmaster lives near the school

校长住在学校附近。

{2}介词+名词性从句。如:

I am curious as to what she will say.

我很想知道她想说什么。

{3}介词+代词。如:

What do you know about him?

关于他,你都知道些什么?

{4}介词+动名词短语或其复合结构。如:

He is interested in swimming.

他对游泳感兴趣。

The painter is keen on collecting coins

那位画家喜欢收集硬币。

There are no risk of you being late

你不会迟到的。

{5}介词+连接词或连接副词引导的从句或不定式。如:

Your success will largely depend upon how you do it.

你成功与否将主要取决于你怎样做。

The teacher gave us a talk on how to study English .

老师给我们做了一个如何学英语的讲座。

{6}介词+数词。如:

Six from twelve is six

12减6等于6。

{7}介词+形容词。如:

We know her of old

我们老早就认识了她。

{8}介词+副词。如:

They worked all day and had a hurried luch in between .

他们工作了一整天,中间匆匆吃了一顿饭。

(2). 介词短语的作用

介词短语在句中可作多种句子成分:

{1} 作主语。如:

From the library to the teaching building is a 5 minutes' walk.

从图书馆到教学楼要走五分钟。

{2} 作表语。如:

Are you for the plan?

你赞成这个计划吗?

I was at my grandma' s yesterday.

我昨天在我奶奶家。

{3} 作宾语。如:

He gave me until tomorrow.

他给我的期限是到明天。

The dog came out from behind the tree. .

狗从树后出来。(behind the tree 作介词 from 的宾语)

{4} 作定语。如:

She is a woman of strong character.

她是位性格坚强的女人。

The expert will give us a lecture on how to improve soil.

这个专家将给我们作一个如何改良土壤的讲座。

{5} 作补语。如:

He woke up and found himself in hospital

他醒来发现自己在医院里。 (in hospital 作宾补)

As a doctor ,he is always patient with the patients

作为一个医生,他一贯对患者很耐心。(As a doctor 作主补)

{6} 作状语。如:

I wil be free on Tuesday morning.

星期二上午我有空。(时间状语)

We' II meet at the station .

我们将在火车站碰面。(地点状语)

She covered her face with her hands and cried

她用双手捂着脸哭。(方式状语)

He left home and worked in a big city for the sake o f money.

他为了赚钱, 离家到一个大城市工作。(目的状语)

The tree died from want of water.

这棵树因缺水而死。(原因状语)

In spite of all his effort ,he failed

尽管他很努力,但还是失败了。(让步状语)

No living thing can live without water.

生物离开水都无法生存。(条件状语)

With the words, he came into the room 他说着话就进来了。(伴随状语)

To a great extent, it is not fair .

在很大程度上,这是不公平的。(程度状语)

In general her works have been good, but this one is dreaful.

总的来说,她的作品很不错,不过这篇很糟。?(in general 作评注性状语)

It doesn't seem ugly to me, on the contrary, I think it's very beautiful.

我觉得它不丑,恰恰相反,我觉得它很美。 (on the cntrary 作连接性状语)

3. 介词与其他词类的固定搭配

介词常常和形容词、名词、动词等构成固定搭配,即某些词的后面常要求特定的介词以表示固定的意义。

(1).形容词与介词的固定搭配

形容词与介词的固定搭配

{1} 形容词+about

Angry with 对......生气 anxous about 担心 calm about 对.....很平静

care bout 小心 careless about 粗心 certain about 对......有把握

curious about 对……好奇 sure about 确信 doubtful about 对……怀疑 enthusiastic about 对……热情的;热心的 hopeful about 对……抱希望 frank about 对……坦白的;坦率的 incredulous about 对……不相信

{2} 形容词+at

clever at 擅长于...... expert at 对......熟练的 good at 擅长于...... indignant at 对......愤慨的 quick at 做......敏捷 slow at 对......反应慢 surprised at 对.......吃惊

{3} 形容词+for

anxious for 渴望的 eligible for 有资格的 famous for 因.....而著名

fit for 对某人适宜 hungry for 对……渴望 late for 迟到 possible for 可能 qualified for 有资格的 ready for 准备好 responsible for 对……负责 necessary for 为……所必需

{4} 形容词+from

absent from 缺席 free from 使……摆脱 prohibited from 禁止某事物 safe from 安全 detached from 分开某物 different from 与……不同

{5} 形容词+in

absorbed in 专心于 disappointed in 对……失望 experienced in 有经验 expert in 在……熟练 fortunate in 有幸 interested in 对……感兴趣 rich in 富于; 盛产 successful in 在……成功

{6} 形容词+ of

afraid of 害怕 ashamed of 羞耻 aware of 知道 certain of 确信 fond of 喜爱 guilty of 有罪的 proud of 骄傲 short of 缺乏 sick of 厌烦 tired of 厌倦 worthy of 值得

{7} 形容词+to

contrary to 与……相反 determined to 有决心的 equal to 等于 familiar to 为……所熟悉 favourabel to 对……有利 harmful to 有害的 inclined to 准备做某事 indifferent to 对……不在乎 similar to 相似;相同

{8} 形容词+with

angry with 对……感到恼火 annoyed at 对……烦恼 busy with 忙于 crowded with 拥挤 familiar with 精通;熟悉 friendly with 与……友好 nervouse with 对……感到紧张 patient with 对……有耐心 popularwith 受欢迎 satified with 对……满意

{9} 形容词+on

dependent on 依靠 intend on 坚决;专心 keen on 热衷于某事物 severe on 严格的

- (2). 名词与介词的固定搭配
- {1} 介词+名词。如:
- at the cinema 在电影院 at university 上大学

from.....point of view 从某人的角度 for the sake of 为了

in poerty 在穷困中 in earnest 有决心的

on sale 在出售 on the average 平均的 on the contrary 相反地

on the radio 通过收音机 to some extent 某种程度

to one' ssurprise 让某人吃惊 to one' sdelight 让某人高兴

{2} 名词+介词。如:

dependence on 依靠 independence on 不依靠

discussion about/on 关于……的讨论 hundres on 数以百计的 thousands of 成干上万的 influence on 对……的影响 explanationof/for 对……的解释 half of……的一半

the idea of.....的主意 lack of 缺乏 proof of......的证据 reason of......的原因

Responsibility for 对......的责任 success in/at 在......成功

(3). 动词与介词的固定搭配

{1} 动词+介词

agree with 同意 ; 赞同	arrive at 到达	arrive in 到达
fall behind 落后	come from 来自	sonsist of 由组成

get to 到达	hear from 收到来信	hear of 听说
laugh at 嘲笑	listen to 听	look after 照看;照料
look at 看	look for 寻找	look like 看起来

{2} 动词+副词+介词

catch up with 赶上; 超过	do well in 在方面做得好	get on with 与某人相处
go on with 继续	take care of 关心	take part in 参加

并列联句

并列连词

并列连词(Coordinating Conjunctions)是指用来连接彼此是并列关系的词、短语、从句或句子的词,被连接的两个部分彼此是独立的,在句法上是平等的。

1. 并列连词的种类

类 别	例词
表示并列关系	and as well as bothand not only,but also neithernor
表示选择关系	or or else eithernor
表示转折关系	but yet while whereas
表示因果关系	for so

2. and

(1) and 和;与;及;同;并

Time and tide wait for no man . 时不我待。(and 表示并列)

Everything ought to be beautiful in a human being: face, and dress, and soul, and ideas.

人的面貌,衣着,心灵,思想,一切都应是美丽的。

(2) and 然后;接着

They shook hands and began to talk at once.

他们握了手后立刻开始了谈话。(and 表示顺序)

He came and sat down and spoke to me.

他来后坐下来和我说话。

(3) and 而且;还;又

I know that he has been arrested and that he is in prison.

我知道他已经被捕并且进了监狱。

Shute is healthy and handsome.

舒特既健康又英俊。

(4) and 那么;则

Come early and you will see him.

早些来,那么你就会见到他了。

Try again and you will succeed.

再试一次, 你就会成功。

3. but

(1) but 但是;可是;然而

She wants to go to college but her parents want her to get married.

她想念大学,但她父母希望她结婚。

The car is very old but in good condition. 这辆车旧了,但性能还不错。

(2) but(用于否定结构后)而(是)

Virtue dwells not in the tongue but in the heart.

看人看心不看嘴。

He didn't come to help, but to hinder us.

他不是来帮忙,而是来阻碍我们的。

4. or

(1) or 或;或者;还是

He must be mad or drunk.

他不是疯了就是喝醉了。

Scotch or Bourbon?

要苏格兰威士忌还是波旁威士忌?

(2) or 否则; 要不然

Be quick, or it may be too late.

快点,不然就会迟到。

Do not move, or you are a dead man.

不要动,不然要你的命。

(3) or(用于否定句) 也不

He never smokes or drinks.

他从不抽烟,也不喝酒。

5.or else

or else 否则;要不然

Hurry up , or else you' Il miss the last bus.

快点,不然你就赶不上末班车了。

Let's get moving, or else we'll miss the train.

我们走吧,不然就赶不上火车了。

6.for

for 因为;由于......的缘故

Sanger has to stay up tonight ,for there is a lot of homework to do.

桑格今晚不得不熬夜,因为有许多作业要做。

The two brothers decided to leave at dawn , for they had many miles to cover.

两兄弟决定黎明启程,因为他们要走许多英里。

7.so

so 因此;所以

It began to rain, so we went home . 天开始下雨了,我们就回家了。

Everybody lent a hand, so the task was done on time.

人人动手,所以任务按时完成了。

8.yet

yet 可是;然而

He worked hard, yet he failed.

他工作努力,可是他失败了。

She said she would be late, yet she arrived on time.

她说她会迟到,但她却准时到达了。

15.9 whereas

whereas 然而;但是;尽管

Some people like fat meat, whereas others hate it.

有些人喜欢肥肉,相反有些人讨厌肥肉。

Some people like strong tobacco, whereas others don?t.

有些人喜欢抽烈性烟,而有些人则不喜欢。

She is diligent, whereas he is lazy.

她很勤快,而他却懒惰。

10.as well as

as well as 除......之外; 既......又; 与......一样; 和

On Sundays, his landlady provided dinner as well as breakfast.

逢星期天,女房东除早饭外还供应他正餐。

Hiking is good exercise as well as fun.

徒步旅行很有趣味,也是很好的锻炼。

In theory as well as in practice, the idea is unsound.

这个主意在理论上和实践上都站不住脚。

He would like to go as well as you.

他和你一样想去。

11.both...and...

both...and ... 和 (两者) 都 ; 不仅 而且 ; 既 又

Both Mary and Peter are washing the dishes.

玛丽和彼得都在洗盘子。

Mary both washes the dishes and dries them.

玛丽不仅洗盘子,而且把它们揩干。

Both the wheat and the barley will be shipped tomorrow.

小麦和大麦明天都要装船运走。

Chickens are raised for both meat and eggs.

养鸡既可吃肉,又可吃蛋。

12.not only...but also...

not only...but also... 不但......而且......

Such work is not only devalued in that country, its nature is widely misunderstood.

这种工作在那个国家不但被贬低,而且工作的性质也被许多人误解了。

He plays not only the piano, but also the violin.

他不仅弹钢琴,而且还拉小提琴。

He can speak not only English, but also French. 他不仅会说英语,而且会说法语。

I not only heard it, but saw it.

我不但听到而且也看到了。

但要注意: not only...but also...中的 but 或 also 有时可省略; 当 not only... but also...位于句首时,可能引起倒装。

13.either...or..

either...or...或.......; 要么......要么......; 不是......就是......

Either come in or go out.

要么进来,要么出去。

He is either drunk or mad.

他不是醉了就是疯了。

The criminal refused to either speak or eat.

罪犯不肯讲也不肯吃。

14.neither...nor...

neither...nor... 既不......也不.....;和.....都不

Neither Mary nor Tom came to our party yesterday.

昨天玛丽和汤姆都没来参加我们的晚会。

He neither drinks , smokes , nor eats meat.

他既不喝酒抽烟,也不吃肉。

但要注意:当 neither...nor...位于句首时,可能引起倒装。

名词件从句

名词性从句

名词性从句(Noun Clause)在句子中起名词作用,根据它们在句中所起的语法作用,这类从句又可分别称为主语从句、表语从句、宾语从句、同位语从句和形容词补语从句。由于名词从句和名词作用相同,因此,可用作句子的主语、表语、宾语和介词宾语等。

1. 主语从句

(1) that 引导的主语从句

that 引导的主语从句可以位于句首,而常见的形式是将作形式主语用的先行词 it 置于句首。

That he will come to the discussion is certain.

他来参加讨论是肯定无疑的。

That mathematics is one of the most useful and fascinating divisions in human knowledge is widely accepted 数学是人类知识中最有用和最令人着迷的部分之一,这一点受到了广泛的认可。

It is strange that she did not come yesterday.

很奇怪,她昨天没有来。

It is a pity that Mr Brown can't attend our English meeting.

真可惜,布朗先生不能出席我们的英语晚会。

(2) 连接代词和连接副词以及连接词 whether 引导的主语从句

Whether it will do us harm or good remains to be seen.

这事会对我们有害还是有益,还要等等看。

Where we shall do the test is still under discussion.

我们在什么地方做这个实验还在讨论。

Why the sun in the morning looks bigger than the sun at noon is very interesting. .

为什么早晨的太阳看上去比中午的太阳大,这事很有趣。

疑问词引导的主语从句可以位于句首,也可以借助于先行词 it 后置。如:

Whether or not an object floats depends on the density of both the object and the water.

一个物体是否会浮起,既取决于该物体的密度,又取决于水的密度。

(3) 名词性关系代词 what ,whatever ,whichever ,whoever 引导的主语从句。

Whoever breaks this law deserves a fine.

违反本法者应予以罚款。

Whichever (of you) comes in first will receive a prize.

(你们中)谁先来谁得奖。

What one thinks and feels is mainly due to tradition, habit and education.

一个人的思想和感情主要归因于传统、习惯和教育。(What=the thing which/that)

2. 表语从句

(1) that 引导的表语从句

My idea is that you should make good use of your time.

我的建议是你该好好利用你的时间。

The reason Tom failed in the exam was that he didn't work hard.

汤姆考试没过的原因是学习不努力。

(2) 连接代词和连接副词以及连接词 whether 引导的表语从句

The question is whether we can finish our work by tomorrow evening.

问题在于我们能不能在明天晚上以前完成这项工作。

(引导表语从句的 whether 不能换作 if)

That is why she had a day -off yesterday.

那就是她昨天请假的原因。

(3) as if 等引导的表语从句

It looks as if it is going to rain.

看起来天要下雨。

I felt as though my head were splitting.

我觉得头仿佛要裂开似的。

注:除了 as if/as though 之外,从属连词 as 和 because 也可以引导表语从句。

Things are not always as they seem to be.事情并不总是如其表象。

It may be because he is too busy .这可能是因为他太年轻了。

It is because he doesn't know hers.这是由于他不认识她。

3. 宾语从句

(1) that 引导的宾语从句

I know that he is friendly and hospitable.

我知道他很友好而且好客。

(由连接代词引导)

Almost all economists agree that nations gain by trading with one another .

几乎所有的经济学家都承认,各国在相互的贸易中受益。

注: ① they told us once again that the situation was serious.

他告诉我们说形势是严重的。

(亦可以说 They told us that once again that the situation was serious).

(他们告诉我们说形势又严重了)但是两句中的 that 皆不可以省去,否则会产生歧义。

② He said he couldn't tell you right away and that you wouldn't understand.

他说他不能马上告诉你,你是不会理解的。

(said 之后可以省去 that,但第二个 that 不可省去。)

3 That he ever said such a thing I simply don't believe.

我简直不相信他曾说过这样的话。(that 从句置于句首是, that 不可省去)

(4) We decided ,in view of his special circumstances, that we would admit him for a probationary period.

鉴于他的特殊情况,我们决定给他一段试用期

(2) 连接代词、连接副词以及连接词 whether/if 引导的宾语从句

History innguists stdudy how languages evolve over time

历史语言学家研究语言是如何随着时间的推移而发展的。(由连接副词引导)

Do you know when we shall have a meeting?

你知道我们什么时候开会吗?(由连接副词引导)

I asked him if he sure what he is doing.

我问他是否确信知道自己在做什么?(连接词 if 以及连接代词引导)

The teacher asked me whether or not I finished my work?

老师问我是否完成了作业。(连接词 wheter 引导)

(3) 名词性关系代词 what, whatever, whichever, whoever 引导的宾语从句

He gave whoever asked for it a copy of his latest paper.

不论谁要他都将他最近写的论文给他一份。

The President is determined to resist what he regards as blackmail by the terrorists. 总统决心抵制他所认为的恐怖分子的敲诈。

You can call me whatever you like.

你叫我什么都行。

You may choose which appeals to you.

你对哪个感兴趣就可以选哪个。

Use which method you prefer.

你喜欢哪个方法就用哪个方法。

4. 介词宾语从句

(1) that 引导的介词宾语从句

that 引导的介词宾语从句仅限于用在 except, but, notwithstanding 等少数介词后。

His account is correct except that some details are omitted.

除了有些细节未提到外,他的叙述是正确的。

He would have helped us but that he was short of money at the time.

要不是他那时缺钱,他一定会帮助我们的。

(2) 连接代词和连接副词引导的介词宾语从句

I have no definite information yet as to which route he will take.

对他将走哪条路线,我们还没有确切的情报。

I know nothing about the matter except what you told me.

除你告诉我的情况以外,对此事我一无所知。

但要注意:引导介词宾语从句的 whether 不能换作 if。

(3) 名词性关系代词 what, whatever, whichever, whoever 引导的介词宾语从句

The boy was interested in whatever he saw here

那孩子对在那里看到的任何事物都感兴趣。

The first prize should go to whoever writes best.

头等奖应颁给最优秀的作者。

5. 同位语从句

(1) that 引导的同位语从句

We are very excited at the news that our Chinese athletes won many gold medals.

听到我们中国运动员赢得了许多金牌的消息我们非常激动。

A new idea occurred to him that it could be done in a very simple way.

他想出一个新主意:这件事可以用一种很简单的方法完成。

(2) 连接代词和连接副词引导的同位语从句

同位语从句通常由 that 引导,但随着与其同位的名词的不同,也可由 whether, when, which, who, how, what, why 等引出。如:

The question, whether we need it, has not yet been considered

我们是否需要它,这个问题还没有被考虑。

I have no idea when she will be back.

我不知道她何时回来。

I have no idea which dictionary is hers.

我不知道哪本词典是她的。

(3) 同位语从句的位置

同位语从句有时不是紧跟在有关的名词后面,而是被其他的词隔开了。如:

We' ve just heard a warming on the radio that a typehoo may be on its way.

我们刚从广播里听到一则气象警报,说有一股台风即将到来。

The question came up at the meeting whether weo had enough meoney for our research.

会上提出了我们的研究经费是否够的问题。

6. 形容词补语从句

(1) that 引导的形容词补语从句

We are certain that he will get over his illness.

我们相信他会康复的。

Ralph was disappointed that he didn?t finish the work on time.

拉尔夫没有按时完成工作,感到很失望。

但要注意:引导形容词补语从句的 that 可以省略。

(2) 连接代词、连接副词和连接词 whether 引导的形容词补语从句

I' m not certain whether the train will arrive on time.

我没有把握火车是否会准点到达。

The beggar was too sleepy to be aware how cold it was.

这个乞丐太困了,没意识到天气有多冷。

定语从句

定语从句

定语从句(Attributive Clauses)通常皆放在它所修饰的名、代词之后,这种名、代词就叫做先行词。引导定语从句的关联词为关系代词和关系副词。定语从句在四、六级和研究生入学考试以及各类应试中都是一项重要的测试内容。

1.关系代词引导的定语从句

在下面几种情况下必须用关系代词 that 引导定语从句:

(1) 先行词是不定代词 all ,few,little,everthing ,nothing anyting,none 等。如:

Is there anything that you want to buy in the shop?

你在商店里有什么东西要买吗?

(2) 先行词被序数词或形容词最高级所修饰,或本身是序数词、基数词、形容词最高级。如:

This is the best movie I' ve ever seen.

这是我看到过的最好的一部电影。

(3) 先行词被 all, any ,every ,each, few,little, no ,some 等修饰时。如:

I have read all the books(that)you gave me. 我读了你给我的所有的书。

(4) 先行词被 the only, the every, the same, the last 修饰时。如:

He is the only person that I want to talk to .

他就是我要谈话的那个人。

(5) 当并列的两个先行词分别表示人和物时。如:

They are talking about thins and persons that they remembered.

他们在谈论他们所能回忆起来的人和事。

(6) 为避免重复, 在以 who 或 which 开头的特殊疑问句中。如:

Who is the girl that is crying?正在哭泣的那个女孩是谁?

Which of the books that borrowed from the library is yours

从图书馆借的哪一本书是你的?

(7) 用作关系代词,修饰表示时间的名词如 day, time, moment 代替 when。如:

It happened on the day that/when he was born

这事碰巧发生在他出生的那天。

(8) 如果有两个定语从句,其中一个关系词已用 which 则另一个用 that。如:

The country built up a factory which produced things that have never been seen before.

这个国家建立了一个工厂,生产以前未曾见到过的东西。

(9) 主句以 there be 开头。如:

This is a seat in the corner that is still free.那个角落还有个座位空着。

2. 限制性定语从句

(1) who 引导的限制性定语从句

关系代词 who 用于指人,通常在句中作主语。在非正式文体中,who 可以代替 whom 在句中作动词宾语和介词宾语,而且常常省略。在作介词宾语时,不能位于介词之后。如:

A doctor is a person who looks after people?蒺 s health.

医生是关照人们健康的人。

Nobody who understands the subject would say such a thing.

懂这一行的人是不会说这样的话的。

The man who I saw is called Smith. 我见到的那个人名叫史密斯。

There's no one works harder than you. 没有比你更用功的人了。

(no one 后省去了用作 主语的 who)

(2) whom 引导的限制性定语从句

The gentleman whom she encountered addressed her with courtesy.

她相遇的那位先生很有礼貌地和她讲话。

I have just met a lady (whom) I saw last week.

我刚遇到一位我上个星期见过的贵妇人。

关系代词 whom 用于指人,是 who 的宾格形式,在从句中作动词宾语或介词宾语,常常省略。 whom 作介词宾语时,介词可位于 whom 之前或句末,在非正式文体中常位于句末;紧接介词的 whom 不能省略。

He wanted to find someone with whom he could discuss books and music.

他想找个能共同研讨书和音乐的人。

This is the teacher (whom) we have talked about.

这就是我们谈论过的那个老师。

(3) whose 引导的限制性定语从句

whose 是关系代词 who 的所有格形式,在从句中作定语。whose 通常指人,也可指动物或无生命的事物:

An electromagnet is a device whose magnetism is produced by an electric magnet.

电磁铁是一种由充电的磁铁产生磁力的装置。

You're the only one whose advice he might listen to.

只有你的话他可能会听。

I'd like a room whose window looks out over the sea.

我想要一个窗户面临大海的房间。

(4) which 引导的限制性定语从句

She was not on the train which arrived just now.

她不在刚才到达的那列火车上。

关系代词 which 在从句中作主语或介词宾语,作宾语时常常省略。which 作介词宾语时,介词可位于是 which 之前或句末,在非正式文体中常位于句末;紧接介词的 which 不能省略。

which 主要用于指无生命的事物,除此之外,还可指婴儿、动物、以及某些表示单数意义的集体名词。

(5) 关系代词 that 引导的限制性定语从句

关系代词 that 既可指人,又可指物。它在从句中可以作主语、动词宾语、介词宾语和表语。that 作动词宾语或介词宾语时常常省略。在作介词宾语时,介词须位于句末,而不能位于 that 之前。

Water that is impure often causes serious illness.

水不洁常会引起重病。

Fanny, bring the water and put it down in the middle of the room, lazy creature that you are.

范妮,拿水来,放在屋子当中,你这懒鬼。

(6) when 等引导的限制性定语从句

关系副词 when 指代和修饰主句中表示时间的先行词,在从句中作时间状语,可以省略。在语义上,when 相当于 "介词+which"。如:

July and August are the months when the weather is hot.

七八月是天气很热的月份。

Every hour since I came has been most enjoyable.

我来之后的每一个小时都是非常好玩的。

On the day before we left home there came a snow storm.

在我们离家的前一天,下了一场暴风雪。

(7) where 引导的限制性定语从句

关系副词 where 指代和修饰主句中表示地点的先行词,在从句中作地点状语,当先行词为 place 时,where 可以省略。在语义上,where 相当于"介词+which":

The knee is the joint where(=at which)the thigh bone meets the large bone of the lower leg.

膝盖是大腿骨和小腿大骨相连处的关节。

She's going home where she can rest.

她要回家了,在家里她可以休息。

A stone marks the spot where the treaty was signed.

有一块石头标着那个签订条约的地方。

(8) why 引导的限制性定语从句

关系副词 why 的先行词只有 reason, 在从句中作原因状语,可以省略:

The reason why he left is not convincing.

他离开的理由无法令人信服。

There was no definite reason why she should do so.

她这样做并没有什么一定的理由。

(9) 关系代词 as 引导的限制性定语从句

关系代词 as 既可指人,又可指物,在从句中作主语、宾语、状语或表语。其具体用法如下:

① as与 the same 连用:

This is the same computer as I have bought.

这台计算机和我买的那台一样。(as 作宾语)

 I^{\prime} II do the experiment the same way as he does.

我将采用和他同样的方法做这个实验。(a s 作方式状语)

he studies in the same college as I do.

他和我在同一所大学学习。(a s 作地点状语)

② as 与 such 连用:

They returned with coffee, wine, and such provisions as were needed.

他们带着咖啡、葡萄酒以及所需的给养回来了。(主语)

here are such questions as are of ten asked by the college students.

这是些大学生们常常问的那类问题。(as 作主语)

I have never seen such kind of girl as she is.

我从未见过像她这样的女孩。(as 作表语)

he didn' t believe such reason as she did so.

他不相信她那样做的理由。 (as 作原因状语)

③ as 与 as 连用:

There is as good fish in the sea as ever came out of it.

海里有的是鱼(天涯何处无芳草)。(主语)

She tried to make as few mistakes as she could avoid.

她尽可能地避免犯错误。(动词宾语)

④ as 与 so 连用:

He can tell so interesting a story as moves us to tears.

他能讲把我们感动得流泪的故事。(主语)

Here is so big a stone as no one can lift.

这是一块没人能搬得动的大石头。(动词宾语)

(10) "介词+关系代词" 引导的限制性定语从句

在介词后引导限制性定语从句的关系代词为 whom ,whose 和 which ,介词的选择取决于它与先行词的搭配或与从句中谓语动词的搭配:

The family at whose house we stayed were friends of my father?s. 我们曾住过的那家的主人是我父亲的朋友。

This is the book for which you asked. 这是你所要的书。

The official to whom we applied for a permit was most obliging.

我们向他申请许可证的那位官员非常热情。

非限制性定语从句

1. 非限制性定语从句

(1) who 引导的非限制性定语从句

Our guide, who was a French Canadian, was an excellent cook.

我们的向导,一个法裔加拿大人,擅长于烹调。

Then he met Mary, who invited him to a party.

后来他遇到玛丽,玛丽邀请他去参加晚会。

My gardener, who is very pessimistic, says that there will be no apples this year.

我家的园丁非常悲观, 他说今年将不结苹果。

(2) whom 引导的非限制性定语从句

关系代词 whom 用于指人,在句中作动词宾语和介词宾语,作介词宾语时,介词可位于句末。如:

Peter, whom you mey in London, is now back in Paris.

彼得现在回巴黎了,你在伦敦见过他。

Mr Smith, from whom I have learned a lot, is a famous scientist.

史密斯先生是一位著名的科学家,我从他那儿学了许多东西。

(3) whose 引导的非限制性定语从句

whose 是关系代词 who 的所有格形式,在从句中作定语。whose 通常指人,也可指动物或无生命的事物。如:

The boy, whose father is an engineer, studies very hard.

那位小男孩学习很努力,他的父亲是位工程师。

Above the trees are the mountains whose magnificence the river faithfully reflects on the surface.

在树林的高处是山,其壮丽的景色完全映照在河面上。

The play, whose style is rigidly formal, is typical of the period.

这剧本是那个时期的典型作品,风格拘谨刻板。

(4) which 引导的非限制性定语从句

关系代词 which 在非限制性定语从句中所指代和修饰的可以是主句中的名词、形容词、短语、其他从句或整个主句,在从句中作主语、动词宾语、介词宾语或表语。

① which 指代主句中的名词,被指代的名词包括表示物、婴儿或动物的名词、表示单数意义的集体名词以及表示职业、品格等的名词。如:

These apple trees, which I planted three years ago, have not borne any fruit.

这些苹果树是我三年前栽的,还没有结过果实。

She is an artist, which I am not.

她是一位艺术家,而我不是。

Water, which is a clear liquid, has many uses.

水是一种清澈的液体,有许多用途。

The two policemen were completely trusted, which in fact they were.

那两个警察完全受到信任,事实上,也真是如此。

② which 指代主句中的形容词。如:

She was very patient towards the children, which her husband seldom was.

她对孩子们很耐心,她丈夫却很少这样。

She is always careless, which we should not be.

她总是马虎大意,我们可不应该这样。

③ which 指代主句中的某个从句。如:

He said that he had never seen her before, which was not true.

他说以前从没见过她,这不是真的。

④ which 指代整个主句。如:

In the presence of so many people he was little tense, which was understandable.

在那么多人面前他有点紧张,这是可以理解的。

He may have acute appendicitis, in which case he will have to be operated on.

他可能得了急性盲肠炎,如果是这样,他就得动手术。

When deeply absorbed in work, which he often was, he would forget all about eating and sleeping.

他经常聚精会神地工作,这时他会废寝忘食。

(5) when 引导的非限制性定语从句

关系副词 when 在非限制性定语从句中作时间状语,指代主句中表示时间的词语。如:

He will put off the picnic until May 1st, when he will be free.

他将把郊游推迟到5月1号,那时他将有空。

(6) where 引导的非限制性定语从句

关系副词 where 在非限制性定语从句中作地点状语,指代主句中表示地点的词语。如:

They went to London, where they lived for six months.

他们去了伦敦,在那儿呆了六个月的时间。

They reached there yesterday, where a negotiation of sale will be held.

他们昨天抵达那里,有一个关于销售的谈判在那儿举行。

(7) as 引导的非限制性定语从句

as 引出非限定性定语从句时,代替整个主句,对其进行说明。但通常用于像 as we all a know, as it is know, as is know to all, as it is, as is said above, as always mentioned above, as is usual, as is often the case, as is reported in the newspaper 等句式中。as 在非限定性定语从句中作主语、表语或宾语,且引出的从句位置比较灵活,可位于句首或句末,也可置于主句中间。通常均由逗号将其与主句隔开。as 有"正如……,就像……"之意。如:

As it known to the United States, Mark Twain is a great American writer.

美国人都知道,马克?吐温是一位伟大的美国作家。(as 在从句中作主语)

He forgot to bring his pen with him, as was often the case.

他忘了带笔,这是常事。(as 在从句中作主语)

He is absorbed in work, as he often was.

他正在全神贯注地工作,他过去经常这样。(as 在从句中作表语)

Boy as he was, he was chosen king.

他虽是孩子,却被选为国王。(as 在从句中作表语)

as we all know, the earth is round.

众所周知, 地球是圆的。(as 在从句中作宾语)

The two brothers were satisfied with this decision, as was agreed beforehand.

两兄弟对此决定都满意,这项决定在事前都已得到他们的同意。(as 在从句中作主语)

Taiwan is , as you know , an inseparable part of China.

你知道,台湾是中国不可分割的一部分。(as 在从句中作宾语)

(8) "介词+关系代词" 引导的非限制性定语从句

在介词后引导非限制性定语从句。关系代词 which 有时并不代表主句中某一确定的词,而是概括整个主句的意思。介词的选择取决于它与先行词的搭配或与从句中谓语动词的搭配。

They were short of sticks to make frames for the climbing vines , without which the yield would be halved.

他们缺搭葡萄架的杆儿,没有它们产量会减少一半。

They thanked Tom, without whose support they would not have succeeded.

他们对汤姆表示了感谢,因为没有他的支持他们就不会成功。

These new neighbors, to whom I was introduced yesterday, have come here from Beijing.

这些邻居是北京来的,昨天我被介绍同他们认识了。

(9) "名词/代词+of+which / whom" 引导的非限制性定语从句

It now has 20, 000 hectares of land, more than two-thirds of which are under cultivation.

现在它拥有两万公顷土地,其中三分之二之多已经耕种。

Light is the fast thing in the world, the speed of which is 300.000 kilometers per second.

世界上光的速度是最快的,其速度是每秒三十万公里。

There are 30 chairs in the small hall, most of which are new.

大厅里有三十把椅子,绝大部分是新的。

The textile mill has over 8, 000 workers and staff, eighty per cent of whom are women.

这家纺织厂有8千多职工,女职工占百分之八十。

状语从句

状语从句(1)

状语从句(Adverbial Clauses)在四、六级、研究生入学考试以及各类应试中是一项比较重要的测试内容。引导状语从句的是一些连词,它们的位置比较灵活,可以置于句首,也可以置于句末。

1. 时间状语从句

- (1) when 引导的时间状语从句
- ①.when 引导的时间状语从句,其动词既可以是延续性动作的动词,也可以是瞬间性动作的动词,而且可以表示主句的动作和从句的动作同时发生,或者从句的动作发生在主句的动作之前。如:

when you apply for a job, you must present your credentials.

当你申请工作时,你必须递交你的有关证件。(同时)

when the students heard the teacher's footsteps, they all atopped talking.

当学生们听到老师的脚步声时,他们都停止了讲话。(从句动作发生在前)

② when 还可表示 just then (正在那时,突然)的意思,此时其所引导的从句只放在主句之后。如:

we were about to start when it began to rain.

我们正要动身,突然天下起雨来。

The game had hardly/scarcely/barely begun when it started raining.

比赛刚刚开始就下起雨来。

- (2) as 引导的时间状语从句
- as 引导的时间状语从句其动词的动作是延续性的,而且侧重表示主句和从句的动作并相发生:

We were having breakfast as she was combing her hair.

她梳头时我们在吃早饭。

It will warm up a little bit on Sunday as the cold front passes.

寒流一过,星期日就会有点暖意了。

(3) while 引导的时间状语从句

while 表示 "在某一段时间里" 或 "在……期间" ,其所引导的从句的动作是延续性的,并侧重表示和主句的动作同时发生。如:

When the teacher paraphrased the text in English, the students listened attentively and took notes.

当老师用英语解释课文时,学生们聚精会神地听并做着笔记。

I can learn while I work.

我可以边工作边学习。

- (4) before 引导的时间状语从句
- ① before "在.....之前"

I have finished my dissertation before my supervisor went abroad.

在我的导师出国之前,我已完成了我的学位论文。

I' ll be back before you have left.

你离开之前我就会回来。

② before ".....之后才"

It may be many years before we meet again.

可能要过许多年我们才能再见了。

It was three days before I came back.

他三天后才回来。

(5) as soon as/once/directly/the instant 等引导的时间状语从句

as soon as 是最常见的表示 "一……就"的从属连词,其他连词还有 once , directly , immediately , instantly , the instant (that) , the

minute(that) , the moment(that)等,它们通常都可与 as soon as 换用。如:

As soon as we got home, the telephone rang.

我们一到家, 电话就响了。

I recognized her immediately I saw her.

我一看见她就认出她来了。

Directly the teacher came in everyone was quiet.

老师一进来,大家就静了下来。

(6) hardly...when/no sooner...than 引导的时间状语从句

关联从属连词 hardly/barely/scarcely...when 和 no sooner...than 的意思是 "刚……就" ,它们所引导的从句中的谓语动词通常为过去完成时。 如:

He had no sooner (no sooner had he)arrived home than he was asked to start on another journey.

他刚一到家,就又要他出另一次差。

No sooner had the words been spoken than he realized that he should have remained silent.

这些话刚一出口,他就意识到自己应该保持沉默。

(7) since 引导的时间状语从句

在含有 since 引导的时间状语从句的复合句中,从句的谓语动词通常为一般过去时,主句的谓语动词通常为现在完成时、过去完成时和一般现在时: We've never met since we graduated from the college.

大学毕业后我们就再没见过面。

Great changes have taken place since you left.

你走了以后,这里发生了巨大变化。

(8) till/until 引导的时间状语从句 till 和 until 同义,作"直到……时(为止)"解,till 多用于非正式文体,until 多用于句首。如:

Donald will remain in college until(till) he finishes his Ph.D course.

唐纳德将留在学校直到完成他的博士学位课程。

I won't go with you until(till) I finished my homework.

等我做完作业我才和你一起去。

(9) whenever/each time/every time 引导的时间状语从句

whenever 在引导时间状语从句时作"每当;每次"解,each time 和 every time 与 whenever 同义,通常可以与它换用。如:

The roof leaks whenever it rains.

每逢下雨屋顶就漏雨。

Whenever certain chemicals are mixed together, heat is produced.

某些化学物质被混到一起时,就会产生热。

Whenever/ Every time/ Each time I met her, she was studying.

我每次看见她时,她总是在学习。

2. 地点状语从句

(1) when 引导的时间状语从句

从属连词 where "在(或到)......的地方"

Where there is a will, there is a way.

有志者事竟成。

Put it where you found it.

把它放在原来的地方。

① where 在地点状语从句中,除指地点外,还可指处境等。如:

He said he was happy where he was.

他说他对自己的处境很满意。

It's your fault that she is where she is.

她今天落到这个地步都怪你。

② 有时地点状语从句中的某些词可以省略。如:

Fill in the blanks with the given phrases. Change the form where necessary.

用所给的短语填空,必要的地方可以改变其形式。

Avoid structure of this kind where possible.

只要可能,就要避免这种结构。

(2) wherever 引导的地点状语从句

从属连词 wherever "在(或到)……的各个地方":

You can go wherever(anywhere) you like these days.

这些天你可以去你想去的地方。

Where (Everywhere) they went, the experts were warmly welcomed.

专家每到一处,都受到热烈的欢迎。

Sit down wherever you like.

你喜欢坐哪儿就坐哪儿。

3. 原因状语从句

(1) because 引导的原因状语从句

because 表示人们不知道的直接的原因或理由,着重点在从句,其所引导的从句,为全句句意的中心所在。通常用于回答 why 引出的疑问句,语气最强,除特别强调外,该从句一般位于主句后面。

I didn' t go abrord with her because I couldn' t afford it.

我没有和她一起出国是因为费用太高。

Don't scamp your work because you are pressed for time.

不要因为时间仓促而马马虎虎。

(2) as 引导的原因状语从句

as 引导的原因状语从句所传递的通常是已知信息,从句多位于主句之前,通常可以和 since 换用。如:

As I didn't know the way, I asked a policeman.

我不认识路,因而问警察。

As it is snowing, we shall not climb the mountain.

由于在下雪,我们不去爬山了。

(3) since 引导的原因状语从句

since 引导的原因状语从句所传递的通常是已知信息,从句多位于主句之前,通常可以和 as 换用。如:

Since traveling by air is much faster, they decided to take a plane.

既然乘飞机旅行快得多,他们就决定坐飞机。

Since you won't help me, I'll ask someone else.

你既然不帮我,那我就请别人帮忙。

(4) now(that)引导的原因状语从句

now(that) "因为;既然" ,通常可以和 since 换用。其中 that 可省去,用来表示一种新的情况,再加以推论。如:

Now(that) you?蒺 ve passed your test you can drive on your own.

你既已考试合格,就可以独自开车了。

I do remember, now (that) you mention it.

你这一提,我倒的确想起来了。

(5) seeing (that)引导的原因状语从句

Seeing (that) "鉴于;由于",通常用于非正式文体。如:

Seeing (that) the weather is bad , we' Il stay at home.

天气不好,我们还是呆在家里吧。

Seeing that he's ill, he's unlikely to come.

(6) in that 引导的原因状语从句

in that "因为;基于……的理由",可以和 because 换用,多用于正式文体,它所引导的原因状语从句总是位于主句之后。如:

Advertisement is distinguished from other forms of communication in that the advertiser pays for the message to be delivered. 广告不同于其他交际形式,因为登广告的人要为其所提供的信息付费。

I' m in a slightly awkward position, in that he' s not arriving until 10th.

我的处境有点难堪,因为他要十号才来。

4. 目的状语从句

(1) in order that 引导的目的状语从句

in order that "为了;以便"。多用于正式文体,通常可以与 so that 换用。如:

You stopped at Hangzhou in order that they could go around West Lake.

他们在杭州停了下来,以便游览西湖。

The expert spoke slowly in order that everyone should understand.

专家讲得很慢,以便人人听得懂。

(2) so (that)引导的目的状语从句

so that "为了;以便"。 so that 通常可以与 in order that 换用,它所引导的目的状语从句总是放在主句之后,在非正式文体中,常省略 that。 如:

Speak clearly so that they may understand you.

你要讲得清楚,他们才听得懂。

She wanted tea ready at seven so she could be out by eight.

她要七点钟备好茶点,这样她八点以前就可以出门了。

(3) in case/for fear (that)/lest 等引导的目的状语从句

in case,for fear(that)和 lest 这三个从属连词都表示否定目的,意思是"以免","以防"。 in case 多用于英国英语,它所引导的从句中的谓语动词可以是陈述语气形式,也可以是虚拟语气形式;for fear(that)引导的从句中的谓语带有 may,might,should 等情态动词;lest 用于正式文体,它所引导的从句中的谓语动词用虚拟语气形式。如:

Take your umbrella with you, lest it should rain.

带上你的伞,以防下雨。

Take your umbrella in case it rains.

带上你的伞,以防下雨。

He took an umbrella with him for fear that it might rain.

他带了一把伞,以防下雨。

状语从句(2)

1. 结果状语从句

(1) so that 引导的结果状语从句

① so that 引导的结果状语从句只能位于主句之后,中间可以有逗号。如:

Suddenly it began to rain heavily, so that it was almost impossible to carry on driving.

突然下起了大雨,几乎无法继续开车。

Linda phoned me in on arrival so that I know she was safe and sound.

琳达到达后给我打了电话,因而我知道她平安无事。

② "so that" 既可引导结果状语从句也可引导目的状语从句。究竟是引导的结果状语从句还是目的状语从句,除了根据句意来判断外,还可根据结构形式来加以判断。若从句前有逗号,一般为结果状语从句,如果从句中有情态动词,通常则为目的状语从句。如:

They started out early, so that they didn't miss the train.

他们早早就出发了,所以没误火车。(结果状语从句)

They started out early so that they would not miss the train.

他们早早出发是为了不误火车。(目的状语从句)

(2) so...that 引导的结果状语从句

so...that "如此……以致",that 在非正式文体中可以省略,so 后面接形容词或副词。如:

She spoke so fast that nobody could catch what she was saying.

她说话如此之快竟没有人听出来她在讲什么。

There is so little time left that I have to tell you about it latter.

现在剩下的时间不多了,我只好以后再给你讲这件事。

(3) such...that 引导的结果状语从句

引导结果状语从句的 such...that 的具体内容是:such+a/an+形容词+名词+that 从句。其中的名词可以是可数名词的单数或复数,也可以是不可数名词。such+a/an+形容词+单数名词+that 从句可换成 so+形容词+a/an+单数名词+that 从句。如:

The Japanese student made such rapid progress that he soon began to write article in Chinese.

那个日本留学生进步很快,不久就开始用中文写文章了。

The professor told us such a funny story that all the students laughed .

(= The professor told us so funny a story that all the students laughed.)

教授讲了个很有趣的故事,(以致于)所有的学生都笑了起来。

(4) such that 引导的结果状语从句

such that 引导的结果状语从句多用于正式文体, 主句为"主—系—表"句型。如:

The force of the explosion was such that it blew out all the windows.

爆炸的力量很大,所有的窗户都被炸掉了。

His anger was such that he lost control of himself.

他气得不能克制自己的感情。

2. 条件状语从句

(1) if 引导的条件状语从句

if 可引导非真实条件状语从句(见"虚拟语气")和真实条件状语从句。如:

If he said that , he can't be telling the truth.

如果他说了那样的话,他不可能是说实话。

(2) unless 引导的条件状语从句

unless 引导的是否定条件状语从句,在意义上相当于 if...not,而且语气较强,一般不用于虚拟语气。如:

You' Il be late unless you hurry.

你会迟到的,如果不赶快的话。

(3) if only 引导的条件状语从句

if only 在引导条件状语从句时意为"只要;如果"。如:

I' Il let you use the car if only you keep it in good condition.

只要你把车保养好,我就让你用。

(4) as/so long as 引导的条件状语从句

as/so long as 意为 "只要;如果"。如:

As long as it doesn' t rain, we can play.

只要不下雨我们就能玩。

(5) provided (that)/providing (that)引导的条件状语从句

provided (that)/providing (that)意为"如果;只要"。如:

I will agree to go provided' providing (that my expense are paid.)

假如为我负担费用,我就同意去。

Providing you promise not to tell anyone else I' ll explain the secret.

3. 让步状语从句

(1) although/though 引导的让步状语从句

although 和 though,都作"虽然;尽管"解,通常可以换用,although 的语气较重。如果要强调"但是"语气,可使用 yet,still 或 nevertheless 来表示"但是"、"依然"或"然而"之意。

Although they have been talking for a long time, he cannot make her believe him.

虽然和她谈了半天,他还是不能让她信任自己。

(2) even if 引导的让步状语从句

even if "即使,纵然",从句表示的是尚未发生的动作或存在的情况。如:

Even if it rains tomorrow, we won't change our plan.

即使明天下雨,我们也决不改变计划。

Even if I failed again, I will not give up the experiment.

即使我再次失败,我也决不会放弃实验。

(3) even though 引导的让步状语从句

even though "虽然,尽管",从句所表示的是已经发生的动作或存在的情况,通常可以和 although/though 换用。如:

Even though I didn't understand a word, I kept smiling.

即使我一个字也不懂,我还是保持微笑。

Even though you say so, I do not believe it.

即使你这样说,我也不信。

(4) much as 引导的让步状语从句

much as "虽然,尽管",通常可以和 although/though 换用:

Much as I' d like to , I can' t come.

我虽然很想来,但是来不了。

Much as I admire his courage, I don't think he acted wisely.

我虽然佩服他的勇气,但我认为他这样做是不聪明的。

(5) while 引导的让步状语从句

while "虽然,尽管",多用于正式文体,通常可换作 although/though。如:

While I understand your point of view, I do not share it.

我虽了解你的观点,但不敢苟同。

While I sympathize, I really can't do very much to help.

虽然我很同情,但我确实帮不了什么忙。

(6) whatever/no matter what 引导的让步状语从句

whatever 和 no matter what 用法相同,都作"无论什么"解,后者多用于非正式文体。如:

Whatever/No matter what he says , don' t go.

不管他说什么,你都不要走。

We are determined to fulfill the task, whatever/no matter what happens.

不管发生什么了,我们决心完成任务。

(7) whichever/no matter which 引导的让步状语从句

whichever 和 no matter which 用法相同,都作"无论哪个"解,后者多用于非正式文体。如:

Whichever/No matter which you buy, there is a six-month guarantee.

不论你买哪个,都有六个月的保修期。

Whichever/No matter which of the two men had stolen her purseBarbara was determined to find them.

不管这两个人是谁偷了她的钱包, 芭芭拉决心找到他们。

(8) whoever/no matter who 引导的让步状语从句

whoever 和 no matter who 用法相同,都作"无论谁"解,后者多用于非正式文体。如:

You can't come in, whoever you are.

不管你是谁,都不能进来。

Whoever/No matter who wants to speak to me on the phone, tell him I' m busy.

不管谁要我接电话, 就说我现在正忙着呢。

(9) whereverno matter where 引导的让步状语从句

wherever 和 no matter where 用法相同,都作"无论在(或到)哪里"解,后者多用于非正式文体。如:

Wherever/No matter where you go, I' m right here waiting fo ryou.

无论你到哪里,我都依然在这里等着你。

(10) however/no matter how 引导的让步状语从句

however 和 no matter how 用法相同,都作"无论如何……"解,后者多用于非正式文体。

However much you regret doing that, there is nothing you can do about it now.

无论你可能多么懊悔你曾经做过的事,现在也无济于事了。

However high it may be , it can' t reach the sky.

它不论有多高,也高不到天上去。

(11) whenever/no matter when 引导的让步状语从句

whenever 和 no matter when 用法相同,都作"无论何时"解,后者多用于非正式文体。如:

Whenever I' m unhappy, he cheers me up.

每当我不高兴时,他就给我鼓劲儿。

(12)(no matter) whether...or 引导的让步状语从句

whether...or 和 no matter whether...or 用法相同,都作"不论......还是"解,后者的语气强一些。如:

When it rains or not, we' re playing football on Sunday.

无论下不下雨,我们星期天一定踢足球。

(13) as 引导的让步状语从句

as 在引导让步状语从句时作"虽然;尽管"和"即使"解,但是它不位于句首,在它前面的可以是形容词、名词、副词等。如:

Strong as you maybe, you cannot lift it.

虽然你可能很有力气,你却无法把它提起来。

Late as it was, they continued to study.

时间尽管不早了,他们仍继续学习。

4. 方式状语从句

(1) as 引导的方式状语从句

as 在引导方式状语从句时意为"以……方式;如同……那样",从句有时是省略句。如:

Do as I say. 要照我说的做。

I did just as you told me. 我正是照你说的办的。

Air is to man as water is to fish. 空气之于人犹如水之于鱼。

(2) as if/as though 引导的方式状语从句

as if 和 as though 的用法相同,都作"好像,仿佛"解。如:

二者引导的状语从句往往用虚拟语气,表示与事实相反。as if 比 as though 更为常用。但也可用陈述语气,表示所说的情况是事实或实现的可能性较大。如:

They looked at me as if 'as though I were mad.

他们瞧着我好像我发疯了似的。

They look as if/as though they know each other.

他们看来好像互相认识。

5. 比较状语从句

(1) as...as 引导的比较状语从句

as...as 表示同级比较, 主句中用形容词或副词的原级形式, 从句常常为省略句。如:

We were as fortunate as them (they were)

我们和他们一样幸运。

I hope she will make as much progress as you (have done).

我希望她将取得和你同样的进步。

(2) not so/as...as 引导的比较状语从句

not so/as...as 表示同级比较,主句中用形容词或副词的原级形式,从句常常为省略句。如:

That's not so/as simple as it sounds.

那件事情不像听起来那么简单。

(3) than 引导的比较状语从句

than 引导的比较状语从句表示同等比较,主句中用形容词或副词的比较级形式,从句常常为省略句。如:

He has lived here longer than I(has lived).

他在这儿住的时间比我长。

They love the girl than(they love) him.

他们爱这个女孩而不爱他。

(4) the..., the...引导的比较状语从句

The more you listen to English, the easier it becomes.

英语听得越多就越容易。

The harder you work, the greater progress you will make.

工作越努力,取得的进步就越大。

倒装

倒装

英语句子的语序通常是主语在前,谓语在后,这种语序称作正常语序或自然语序。但有时出于语法或达到某种修辞目的(强调、承上启下、平衡等)的需要,要把谓语动词放在主语前面,这种语序称作倒装(Inversion)语序。将谓语动词完全移至主语之前,称完全倒装(Full Inversion);如果只是把助动词或情态动词放在主语之前,称为部分倒装。

1. there be 结构的倒装

在 "there be" (或 there + appear to be , come , exist, happen to be, lie, live, occur, remain, seem, seem to be, stand, used to be) 雪结构中,倒装形式为完全倒装。如:

There were many students in the reading room in this evening.

今晚阅览室里有许多学生。

There is a TV set, a stereo system and a number of chairs in the sitting room.

客厅里有一台电视机,一套组合音响和一些椅子。

2. here, there, now, then 等引起的倒装

在以 here,there,now,then 等简短副词引起的句子中(前三个须用一般现在时),动词往往是 be,come,go 等时, 这类句子大多带有引起注意的含义。如:

Here comes the bus.

公共汽车来了。

Here is the letter you have been looking forward to.

你久盼的信在这儿。

但要注意:如果主语是人称代词,则不用倒装。如:

Here they are. 他们在这儿。

3. 省略 if 的非真实条件状语从句中的倒装

虚拟结构中的条件从句省去 if 时, were, had, should 须移至主语之前。如:

Had you worked harder at college, you would have got better job.

如果你在大学期间读书用功些,现在就会找到一份更好的工作。

Were he better qualified, he would apply for the position.

要是他的条件再好些, 他就申请这个职位。

4. 副词 so, neither, nor 等引起的倒装

在用 so, nor, neither 表示 "也/不……" 这一类结构里其公式是:

肯定: so+be/have/助动词/情态动词+主语

否定: Neither(nor)+be/have/助动词/情态动词+主语。如:

- —He has been to Beijing.他去过北京。
- —So have I.我也去过。
- —They can't answer the question.他们不会回答这个问题。
- —Neither than I.我也不会。

5. what , how 引起的倒装

以 What, how 开头的感叹句(表语或宾语提前)。如:

What beautiful weather (it is)!

多好的天气啊!(表语提前)

What a lovely picture he painted!

他画了一张多好的画啊!(宾语提前)

6. 疑问词或连接词引起的倒装

在疑问词或连接词 whether 等引起的从句中。如:

Whatever you may say, I won't go there.

无论你怎样说,我都不会去那儿。(状语从句中宾语提前)

What book he wants is not clear.

他要什么书还不清楚。(主语从句中宾语提前)

7. 否定词位于句首时引起的倒装

(1). never, seldom, hardly, little, few 等引起的倒装

否定词 never, seldom, rarely, hardly, barely, scarcely, little, few 等位于句首时所引起的倒装句通常为部分倒装形式,如果谓语动词为be的一般现在时或一般过去时,则为完全倒装形式。如:

Never shall I forget the days when you were with us.

我很少有时间去看电影。

(2). nowhere, no longer, no more 等引起的倒装

nowhere(无处), no longer(不再), no more(也不)等否定词位于句首时所引起的倒装句通常为部分倒装形式,如果谓语动词为 be 的一般现在时或一般过去时,则为完全倒装形式:

No longer was he in charge of this work.

他不再负责这项工作了。

(3). not until, not a, not in the least 等引起的倒装

not until(直到……才), not a(一个……也没有), not in the least(一点儿也不), not for a minute/moment(一点儿也不)等位于句首时,通常引起倒装(not a 之后的名词作主语时除外),其形式通常为部分倒装形式,如果谓语动词为 be 的一般现在时或一般过去时,则为完全倒装形式。如:Not until all the demands had been turned down did the workers decide to go on strike.

一直到所有的要求遭到拒绝之后,工人们才决定罢工。

Not once did he talk to me.

他一次也没有和我谈过。

(4). under no circumstances, by no means, in no way 等引起的倒装

in/under no circumstances(无论如何不), by no means (决不), in no case (无论如何不), in no way (决不), on no account (决不可), on no condition(决不)等短语位于句首时所引起的倒装句通常为部分倒装形式,如果谓语动词为 be 的一般现在时或一般过去时,则为完全倒装形式。如:

In no case must force be resorted to.

决不准许诉诸武力。

By no means is it true that all English people know their own language well.

并非所有的英国人都通晓本国语。

8. 关联连词位于句首时引起的倒装

(1). not only...but also 引起的倒装

not only...but also 位于句首所引起的倒装句为部分倒装形式,如果谓语动词为 be 的一般现在时形式或一般过去时形式,则为完全倒装形式。如:Not only should we not be afraid of difficulties, but also we should try our best to overcome them.

我们不仅应该不怕困难,而且应该尽最大努力去克服它们。

(2). neither...nor 引起的倒装

neither...nor 位于句首引起的倒装句为部分倒装形式,如果谓语动词为 be 的一般现在时或一般过去时,则为完全倒装形式。如:

Neither Peter wanted the responsibility, nor did his wife.

彼得不想担此责任,他妻子也不想担此责任。

(3). hardly...when/no sooner...than 引起的倒装

hardly/scarcely/barely...when 或 no

sooner...than 位于句首所引起的倒装句为部分倒装形式,如果谓语动词为 be 的一般现在时或一般过去时,则为完全倒装形式。如:

Hardly had he arrived when/No sooner had he arrived than he was asked to leave again.

他刚到就又被请走了。

(4). so...that 引起的倒装

so...that 位于句首所引起的倒装句为部分倒装形式,如果谓语动词为 be 的一般现在时或一般过去时,则为完全倒装形式。如:

So angry was he (He so angry) that he couldn't speak.

他如此愤怒,以致说不出话来。

(5). such...that 引起的倒装

such...that 位于句首所引起的倒装句为部分倒装形式,如果谓语动词为 be 的一般现在时或一般过去时,则为完全倒装形式。如:

Such was the force of the explosion that all the windows were broken.

爆炸的威力如此之大,以致所有的窗户都被震破了。

9. only 引起的倒装

当副词 only 位于句首并修饰状语或宾语时,引起句子的倒装,其形式通常为部分倒装,如果谓语动词为 be 的一般现在时或一般过去时,则为完全倒装。如:

Only in this way can you solve this problem.

只有用这种方法,你才可以解决这个问题。

Only yesterday did I finish this the book.

到昨天我才读完那本书。

10. 表语位于句首时所引起的倒装

当作表语的形容词、副词、介词短语等位于句首时,常常引起倒装,其形式为完全倒装:

Aristotle says, "Plato is dear to me, but dearer still is truth."

亚里斯多德说, "吾爱柏拉图,但更爱真理。"

Present at the meeting were Professor Smith, Professor Brown, Sir Hugh and many other celebrities.

到会的有史密斯教授、勃朗教授、休爵士以及许多其他知名人士。

11. 状语位于句首时所引起的倒装

(1). 当位于句首的状语是一些表示地点的介词短语或表示运动方向的副词(如 away , back , down , in , off , out , up) 时 , 常常引起倒装 , 其形式为全部倒装。如:

Away went the runners.

赛跑手们刷地跑开了。

Down came the rain.

雨哗地落下来了。

(2).介词短语作地点状语,放在句首,后面跟的是不及物动词 be,come,sit live,stand,lie,exist 等时常常引起倒装,其形式为全部倒装。如:

Next to the table is a chair.

桌旁有把椅子。

At the South Pole lies Antarctica, the coldest and most desolate region on earth.

南极洲位于南极,它是地球上最寒冷和最荒凉的地区。

12. 状语从句中的倒装

(1).让步状语从句中的倒装

as 引导的让步状语从句中的倒装:

在 as 引导的让步状语从句中,位于句首的可以是形容词、名词、副词,还可以是谓语动词的一部分,从而形成从句的部分倒装。如:

Tires as he was, he continued the work.

虽然他累了,但是仍然继续工作。

(2).方式状语从句中的倒装

as 引导的方式状语从句一般为正常语序,但是,如果主语比谓语长,可将谓语动词置于主语之前,形成完全倒装。如:

He believed, as did all his family, that the king was the supreme lord.

他和他全家人一样,都认为国王是至高无上的君主。

(3).比较状语从句的倒装

than 引导的比较状语从句中的倒装:

由 than 引导的比较状语从句一般为正常语序。但是,如果主语较长,可将谓语动词置于主语之前,形成完全倒装:

Western Nebraska generally receives less snow than does eastern Nebraska.

内布拉斯加西部地区的降雪通常比东部地区少。

13. the more..., the more...结构中的倒装

在以 the more..., the more...引导的倒装结构中,采用部分倒装;如果主句的主语较长,可将谓语动词置于主语之前,形成完全倒装。如: The more books you read(宾语提前), the wider your knowledge is(表语提前). 书读得越多,知识就越渊博。

一致关系

一致关系

1. 概述

所谓一致关系就是在英语句子中各个成分之间必须在人称、性、数等方面保持一定的语法关系。一致关系必须遵循三个原则,即语法一致原则、 意义一致原则和就近一致原则。

(1). 语法一致

主语为单数形式,谓语动词用单数形式;主语为复数形式,谓语动词也用复数形式。如:

The number of mistakes was surprising.

错误的数量很惊人。

- (2). 意义一致
- ①. 主语形式虽为单数,但意义为复数,谓语动词要用复数形式。如:

My family are having supper now.

我们一家人现在正吃晚饭。

②. 主语形式为复数而意义上却是单数,谓语动词要用单数形式。如:

Thirty dollars is too expensive for this dictionary.

这本词典 30 美元太贵了。

(3). 就近一致

谓语动词的单、复数形式取决于最靠近它的词语。如:

Not only the teacher but also his students like playing football.

不仅老师喜欢踢足球,而且学生也喜欢踢足球。

2. 主谓一致(名词与动词的一致)

(1). 单复数同形的名词作主语时谓语动词的形式

单复数同形的名词作主语时,如果表示单数意义,谓语动词用单数形式;如果表示复数意义,谓语动词用复数形式:

This glass works was set up in 1980.

这家玻璃厂建于1990年。

(2). 只有复数形式的名词作主语时谓语动词的形式。

只有复数形式的名词作主语时,谓语动词用复数形式。如:

Where are my spectacles?I can't find them.

我的眼镜呢?我找不着。

(3). 以-s 结尾的不可数名词作主语时谓语动词的形式

以-s 结尾的不可数名词作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式。如:

What's the news?

有什么新闻?

- (4). 以-s 结尾的专有名词作主语时谓语动词的形式
- ① 以-s 结尾的表示国家、组织等名称的专有名词作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式,如:

the Netherlands 荷兰 the United States 美国 the United Nations 联合国 The Canterbury Tales《坎特伯雷故事集》

②以-s结尾的表示山脉、群岛等复数意义的专有名词作主语时,谓语动词用复数形式。如:

the Alps 阿尔卑斯山 the Philippine Islands 菲律宾群岛 the Appalachians 阿巴拉契亚山脉 the Himalayas 喜马拉雅山脉

The Alps are the greatest mountain range in Europe. They cover an area of about 200,000 sq.km..

阿尔卑斯山脉是欧洲最大的山脉,其面积为20万平方公里。

- (5). 集体名词作主语时谓语动词的形式
- ① 集体名词作主语时,如果表示整体概念,谓语动词用单数形式,如果就其中一个个成员而言,谓语动词用复数形式。如:

Nowadays almost every family in the villiahe owns a televison.

如今村上几乎每家都有电视机。

army, association, audience, band, board(董事会), cast(全体演员), choir(唱诗班), chorus, clan (部落; 党派), class, city, club, college, commission, committee, company, corporation, council, couple, crew, crowd, department, enemy, faculty, family, federation, firm, gang, generation, government, group, institution, jury(陪审团), majority, mainkind, military, minority, nation, navy, opposition, orchestra, pair, party, personel, population, public, school, staff, team, tribe, union, univerty.

② 有些集体名词如:cattle, folk, militia, people, police, police, youth 等,只当复数看待,谓语动词必须用复数。如:

There are many people in the meeting room.

会议室有很多人。

③ 具有单数意义的集体名词作主语时,谓语动词为单数形式。如:

There is a lot of furniture in his living-room.

他的客厅里有很多家具。

(6). 主语为外来的复数名词时谓语动词的形式

某些外来的复数名词已没有复数意义,故谓语动词常用单数。如:

This data is very interesting.

这项数据很有意思。(也可用复数动词 are)

(7). 表示时间、距离、金钱等的复数名词作主语时谓语动词的形式

当名词词组中心词为表示度量、距离、金额、时间等复数名词时,往往可以根据意义一致的原则,把这些复数名词看作一个整体,谓语动词用单数形式。如:

Three years has passed.

三年已经过去了。

- (8). 代词作主语时谓语动词的形式
- ① 不定代词 each, every, no 等修饰的名词即使以 and 或逗号连接成多个并列主语,谓语动词仍用单数形式。如:

Every man has his fault.

每个人都有缺点。

No man is born wise.

人非生而知之。

② 如果主语由 more than one...或 many a ...构成,尽管从意义上看是复数,但它的谓语动词仍用单数形式。如:

More than one student has seen the film.

不止一个学生看过那部电影。

③ both, (a) few, many, several 等限定词修饰主语时,要用复数形式。如:

Both (of) these films are boring.

这两部电影都没意思。

Few (of) the guests are familiar to us.

客人中没有几个是我们熟悉的。

④ such, the same 起指示代词作用时,应根据其所指的内容来决定单、复数。如:

Such is our plan.

我们的计划就是这样。

⑤ all, most, none, some 等代词作主语时,要遵循意义一致的原则,即其谓语动词的单、复数形式要根据它们所代替的词的含义来确定。如:All of my classmates work hard 我们班所有同学学习都很用功。

All of the water is gone.所有的水都用光了。

⑥ 由代词 each, every one, no one, either, neither,another,the other 作主语,以及由合成代词 some(any,no,every)+thing(body, one)雪作主语时,均跟单数谓语动词。如:

Each of the twenty guests was given a present.

给 20 位客人每人赠送一份礼品。

② 关系代词 who, that, which 等在定语从句中作主语时,其谓语动词的数应与句中的先行词的数一致。如:

Those who want to go please sign your name here.

想去的人请把名字签在这里。

- (9). 表示不定数量的短语作主语时谓语动词的形式
- ① a (great) number of, many, a few 修饰可数名词,其短语作主语,谓语动词一般用复数;a little, much, agreat deal of, a large amount of 修饰不可数名词,其短语作主语时,谓语动词用单数。 如:

在美国发现了许多其他种类的植物,如豆类、马铃薯以及各种各样的果类。

A number of other plants were found in America, for example, beans, potatoes, and different fruits.

许多学生到农场帮助农民摘苹果去了。

② (a large) quantities 修饰可数复数名词以及不可数名词,其短语作主语时,谓语动词一般用复数。large amount of 修饰不可数名词,其短语作主语时,谓语动词一般用复数。如:

Large quantities of water are needed for pouring purpose.

冷却需要大量的水。

③ a series of 的后面接复数名词,作主语时谓语用单数形式。如:

There has been a whole series of accidents on this stretch of road recently.

最近在这一段路上发生了一连串事故。

- ④ the number of + 可数名词 , the amount of + 不可数名词 , the quantity of
- +可数复数名词或不可数名词构成的短语作主语时,谓语动词用单数形式。如:

As a result, the number of the people who travel by plane in china is larger than ever before.

结果,在中国乘飞机旅游的人数比以前大大增加。

(10). 分数或百分数作主语时谓语动词的形式

"分数或百分数 + of + 名词"构成短语或有 "a lot of ,lots of,half of,plenty of ,a (large) quantity of ,the rest of,the remainder of,a heap of,heaps of + 可数或不可数名词"构成短语作主语时,谓语形式是用单数还是复数取决于它们表示的意义。试比较:

Half of the students have read the bovel.一半学生读过这本小说。

Half of the food is unfit to eat.一半的食物不能吃了。

- (11). 数词、量词作主语时与谓语动词的形式
- ① 基数词单纯表示数字作主语时,其谓语通常用单数形式,但当基数词表示的不是数值而是数量时,谓语动词可用复数形式。如: Ten billion is a large number.

100 亿是个大数字。

② 用作运算的数词作主语时,其谓语常用单数形式。如:

Three plus(and) five is (makes, equals, gives) eight.

三加五等于八。

(12). 名词化形容词作主语时谓语动词的形式

名词化的形容词作主语,"the + 形容词(或过去分词)"结构充当主语时,如表示一类可数的人或事物时,用复数谓语;如表示一类不可数的事物或少数过去分词与定冠词连用时指个别,则用单数。这类词往往有:the brave, the poor, the rich, the blind, the young, the old, the sick, the dead, the deaf and dumb, the sgreeable, the oppressed, the injured, the wounded, the unemployed 等。如:

The rich are for the plan, but the poor are against it.

富人赞成这项计划,但穷人反对这项计划。

(13). 非限定动词短语作主语时谓语动词的形式

动名词短语、动词不定式作主语时,谓语动词用单数。如:

Nodding the head means agreement, while shaking it means disagreement

点头意味着同意,摇头意味着不同意。

(14). 名词性从句作主语时谓语动词的形式

从句作主语时,谓语动词通常用单数;由 what 引导的主语从句,如果从句谓语或从句后的表语是复数形式时,则要求用复数形式的谓语。如:Whether he will come or not is uncertain.

他来不来还不一定。

- (15). 用连接词连接的名词或代词作主语时谓语动词的形式
- ① 由连接词连接的名词或代词作主语。

用 and 或 both...and 连接并列主语,谓语动词通常用复数形式。如:

Lucy and Lily are twins

露茜和莉莉是孪生姐妹。

Chapter three and the last chapter are written by Professor Liu.

第三章和最后一章是由刘教授写的。

② 当名词或代词后跟有 with, as well as, as much as, no less than, along with, like, rather than, together with, but, except, besides, including, in additionto, combined with 等连接作主语时,谓语动词一般和前一名词或代词的人称和数一致。 如:

John, rather than his roommates, is to blame.

约翰,而不是他的室友,应该受到责备。

(16). or,either...or,neither...nor,not only...but also 等连接的并列主语的谓语动词形式

以 or, either...or, neither...nor, not only...but

also 等连接的并列主语的谓语动词形式,通常依据就近原则,即人称和数的形式与最靠近它的名词或代词保持一致。如:

You or he is in the wrong.

不是你错了,就是他错了。

(17). there+be 句型中并列主语的谓语动词形式

在"there+be"句型中, there+be 之后的名词是句子的主语。主语是单数则谓语动词为 is/was, 主语是复数则动词为 are/were。如果句子的主语是两个以上的名词, 又有单数和复数的区别,则采取就近一致原则。即邻近动词的名词是单数则动词用 is/was, 邻近动词的名词是复数则动词用 are/were。如:

There is a laser printer and a cordless telephone on the desk.

桌子上有一台激光打印机和一部无绳电话。

3. 主语与状语逻辑主语的一致

表示时间、条件以及伴随情况等状语的逻辑主语必须和句子的主语保持一致,否则意义就会含混不清。如:

误: Having been delayed by heavy traffic, it was important for her to arrive on time.

IE: Having been delayed by heavy traffic, she found it important for her to arrive on time.

由于交通堵塞的耽搁,她觉得不可能按时到达了。

误: After finishing his speech, the audience was invited to ask question.

I: After finishing his speech, he invited the audience to ask question.

他发完言后,邀请听众提问题。

4. 同等成分的一致

(1).句子中的同等成分应该在结构上保持一致,否则会使句子失去平衡和协调。

Sleep, rest and relaxed are the best remedies for many headaches.

睡眠、休息和娱乐是治疗多种头痛的最好方法。(应改为:relaxation)

The oxygen in the air we breathe has no tasted, smell, or color.

我们所呼吸的空气中的氧是无味、无嗅和无色的。(应改为:taste)

误: Collecting stamps, playing chess and to catch butterflies are Mary's hobbies.

正: Collecting stamps, playing chess and catching butterflies are Mary's hobbies.

集邮、下棋和捉蝴蝶是玛丽的爱好。

(2).在比较结构中,被比较的事物应是同等成分。在比较从句中常用that代替前面单数名词,用those代替复数名词。

误: The workers in that factories are fewer than our factory.

 $\boldsymbol{\mathbb{E}}$: The workers in that factories are fewer than those our factory.

那个工厂的工人比我们厂的工人少。

省略

省略

省略(Elliptical Sentences)是将句子中一个或多个成分省去,避免重复,使语言简练紧凑的一种语法手段,在英语中,凡是能省去的词语通常都应省去,省略后的结果不仅能使句子更加精炼,而且还可起到连接上下文使相邻词语受到强调的作用。

1. 简单句中的省略

(1). 省略主语

通常多用在祈使句或口语中的固定表述中

Thank you for your help . 谢谢你的帮助。

Have a good time . 愿你过得愉快。

Hurry up! 快一点!

Haven't seen you for ages. 好久不见了。

(2).省略谓语或谓语的一部分

(Does) Anybody need help? 谁要帮忙吗?

(Is there)Anything you want? 你要什么东西吗?

Who (comes) next? 该谁了?

(3).省略主语和谓语的一部分

(Do you) Understand? (你)明白吗?

(Come) This way, please. 请这边走。 (I am) Afraid I can?t come. 恐怕不能来了。

(4).同时省略多种句子成分

Diana likes reading better than going to parties.(than 后省掉了 she likes)

黛安娜爱读书而不爱去参加聚会。

You are a college student, aren' t you? (= aren' t you a college student?)

你是一名大学生,不是吗?

Has she gone or not?(= Has she gone or has she not gone?)

她走了没有?

2. 并列句中的省略

(1).当并列的主语相同时,后面的主语被省略

The car was quite old but (it) was in excellent condition.

这部车相当旧了,但机器性能还非常好。

They shook hands and (they) began to talk at once.

他们握了手后立刻开始谈话。

(2).当并列的谓语动词相同时,动词(包括助动词、不定式等)可省略

Reding makes a full man; conference (makes) a ready man; writing an exact man.

读书使人充实;讨论使人机智;写作使人准确。

Some of us study French, others (study) German.

我们中有的学法语,有的学德语。

(3).省略动词宾语和介词宾语

Let' s do the dishes.I' ll wash (the dishes) and you dry (the dishes).

我们洗碗吧, 我来洗碗, 你来把碗弄干。

(4).省略定语

A group of young boys and (young) girls are dancing on the meadow below the hill.

一群少男少女在山下的草地上跳舞。

(5).省略状语

He was not hurt. (How) Strange!

他没有受伤。真奇怪!

(6).省略多种句子成分

We tried to help her but (we tried) in vain.

我们想法子帮他,但没用。

Kate is easy in conversation and (she is) graceful in manner.

凯特谈吐从容,举止优雅。

3. 名词性从句中的省略

(1). 在 wh-从句中的省略。

He came to see me once, but I don't remember when (he came to see me).

他曾经来看过我,但我忘了是什么时候了。

Somebody has taken away my dictionary by mistake, but I don't know who (has taken my dictionary).

有人错拿了我的词典,但我不知道是谁。

You were late again, and I hope you will explain why (you were late again).

你又迟到了,我希望你能解释一下为什么。

(2). 引导宾语、主语、表语从句的连词 that 通常可以省略。

It is a pity (that) he can't come.

遗憾的是他不能来。

4. 定语从句中的省略

(1). 关系代词的省略

① who(m), which 或 that 在从句中作动词宾语时可以省略。如:

The computer(which) I wanted to buy was sold out.

我想买的那种电脑卖完了。

The actress (whom/who/that) he admired so much died last week.

他崇拜不已的那位女演员上个星期去世了。

② who(m), which 或 that 在从句中作位于句末的介词宾语时可以省略。如:

This is the person (whom/that/who) you are looking for.

这就是你要找的那个人。

③ 在以 there is, it is, this is, who is 开头的句子里, 作主语用的关系代词被省略。如:

This is the fastest train (that) is to Beijing.

这是到北京最快的一趟列车。

(2). that 在定语从句中作表语时可以省略。

He is no longer the man (that) he used to be.

他不再是过去的那个人了。

My hometown is not a polluted place (that) you think it to be.

我的家乡不是像你认为的那样,是一个污染严重的地方。

(3). the same...as 引导的定语从句中的部分内容通常可以省略

I have the same trouble as you (have).

我和你有同样困难。

5. 状语从句中的省略

(1). 在时间状语从句中,如果从句中的主语和主句的主语相同,而且从句中的动词为 be ,则把从句中的主语和 be 一并省略。 Look out for cars when (you are) crossing the street.

穿越街道时注意车辆。

(2). 在地点状语从句中,如果从句中的主语和主句的主语相同,而且从句中的动词为 be 时,则把从句中的主语和 be 一并省略。

Fill in the blanks with the given phrases. Change the form where (it is) necessary.

用所给的短语填空,必要的地方可以改变其形式。

Avoid structure of this kind where (it is) possible.

只要可能就要避免这种结构。

(3).在条件状语从句中,如果从句中含有"It+be+形容词"结构,将 it 和 be 省略。如果从句中的动词为"助动词+-ed 分词"则将主语和助动词一并省略。

If (it is) necessary I' Il have the paper copied.

如果必要我可以请人把这篇文章复印一下。

(4). 在让步状语从句中,当从句中的主语和主句中的主语相同,而且从句的动词为 be,则将从句中的主语和 be 一并省略。

Though (they are) reduced in numbers, they are still strong.

虽然人数减少了,但他们仍很强大。

(5). 在方式状语从句中,省略主语和 be 的某种形式,只保留形容词、介词短语、不定式、现在分词、过去分词等。

Lucy hurriedly left the room as if (she was) angry.

露西急匆匆地走出房去,好像很生气的样子。

(6). 在比较状语从句中的省略。

省略作主语的 what。如:

They have got more than (what) is necessary.

他们得到的太多了。

省略谓语动词。如:

He has lived here longer than I (has lived).

他在这儿住的时间比我长。

省略主语和谓语或谓语的一部分。如:

It was not so hot yesterday as (it is) today.

昨天没有今天热。

6. 各类词语的省略

(1). 名词(短语)的省略

One hour today is worth two (hours) tomorrow. 今天的一小时胜过明天的两小时。

She likes classical (music) and country music. 她喜欢古典音乐和乡村音乐。

(2). 限定词或代词的省略

(A) Friend of mine gave it to me. 我的一位朋友给我的。

(The)Trouble is we can't afford it. 问题是我们买不起。

My teachers and (my) fellow students have never heard about it.

我的老师和同学都未听到过这件事。

(3). 介词的省略

(Of)Course that's only a beginning. 当然这只是一个开头。

Why don't you catch up on it (on) Sunday? 为什么不想办法星期天把它做完。

(4). 不定式的(短语)的省略

He didn't come, though we had invited him to (come).

我们曾邀请过他,但他没来。

Her work is to look after the child and (to) cook.她的任务是看孩子做饭。

(5). 分词的省略

The meeting (being) over, we all left the room. 会议结束以后,我们都离开了房间。

Our work (having been) finished, we went home. 工作完成之后,我们就回家了。

(6). 存在句中 there 的省略

(There) Must be something wrong with the car. 汽车一定出了什么毛病。

(There)Appears to be an accident over there. 那边好像出了事故。

7. 省略的一些特殊用途

(1). 用于成语、谚语及一些固定的说法

What if it rains when we can't get under shelter?

假如下起雨来,我们又没处避雨可怎么办?

How about going to France for our holidays? 咱们到法国去度假好吗?

More haste, less speed.欲速则不达。

An idle youth, a needly age.少壮不努力,老大徒伤悲。

First come, first served.先来先卖。/先到的先招待。

Better late than never.迟做总比不做好。

No pains, no gains.不劳则无获。

(2).用于口语中常见的省略句型

Thanks! (=I thank you very much!) 多谢你!

Not at all! (= You needn't thank me at all) 不客气。

Sorry. (=I' m sorry.) 对不起。

Never mind.(=You never mind.) 没关系。

Enough! (=That's enough.) 够了!

See you later.(=I shall see you later.) 再见!

(3). 用于电报、广告、公共揭示用语、笔记、摘要、日记、报纸标题以及一些固定的表格

Congratulations on Your Great Success in Exam for Ph.D.Degree!

祝贺你参加博士学位考试成绩优异!)电报)

Passed TOEFL Exam Marks 636. 通过托福考试成绩 636 分。(电报)

Wanted: a typist.招聘: 打字员一名。(广告)

Keep off the Grass(Lawn)!勿踏草地!(揭示)

No Unauthorized Photography!未经准许,不准拍照!(揭示)

IT 的用法

it 的用法

it的用法很重要也很复杂。it除作人称代词外,还可用作先行代词,引导后面的短语或从句。此外,it还用于强调句中。

1. it 的用法

(1). it 用作人称代词

① it 用作人称代词,通常指人以外的生物和事物,无阴阳之分。如:

There is a car near the building. It is my neighbour's.

楼旁有辆小汽车,它是我邻居的。

Mr Zhang wrote a novel. It is about the miserable life of a young woman.

张先生写了一部小说,它是关于一个年轻妇女悲惨生活的。

② it 有时可用来代替小孩 (child) 和婴儿 (baby)。如:

The child smiled when it saw its mother.

小孩看到母亲就笑了。

(2).it 可用作指示代词相当于 this 和 that

It is a very good translation.

这是一篇很好的译文。

(3).代表前面已提到的或将要发生的某件事情

I had a talk with our boss. It was very helpful.

我同我的上司谈了一次话,这次谈话很有帮助。(it 代表前句的内容)

They were asked to complete the task in two weeks. It is not an easy job.

要求他们两周内完成任务,这可不是件容易的事。(it 代表前句的内容)

(4).指时间、距离和自然现象等,此时 it 在句中作主语

What time is it now? It's half past eight.

几点了? 八点半。(指时间)

Is it very far to the station? 到火车站很远吗?(指距离)

(5).It 用作先行代词

① it 作形式主语

代替不定式短语。如:

It is necessary for us to learn something about the use of "it".

对我们来说了解一些 "it" 的用法是必要的。

代替动名词短语。如:

It's no use crying over spilt milk.

牛奶泼出了, 哭也没有用。(覆水难收/事已如此,后悔无用)

代替 that 引导的主语从句。如:

It appears that Geoffrey might change his mind.

杰弗里可能改变主意。

② it 作形式宾语

代替不定式(短语)。如:

I found it very interesting to study English.

我觉得学习英语很有趣。

代替动名词(短语)。如:

I think it no use telling them.

我认为告诉他们没用。

代替 that 引导的宾语从句。如:

They want to make it clear to the public that they are doing an important and necessary job.

他们要向公众表明,他们在做一件必须做的重要工作。

2. it 用以引导强调句

(1). it 强调句的几种强调情况

要强调句子的某一部分(通常是主语、宾语、状语)时,通常用 "It is(was) + 被强调部分 + that(who) + 句子的其余部分"这种句子结构。强调部分指人时用 who 或 that,指其他成分时用 that。假如原来的句子为:

David bought a walkman from a store yesterday.

大卫昨天在商店买了一台随身听。

下面四个强调结构分别强调句中的主语、宾语和两个状语。

It was David who/that bought a walkman from a store yesterday. (强调主语 David)

It was a walkman that David bought from a store yesterday. (强调宾语 walkman)

It was from a store that David bought a walkman yesterday. (强调地点状语 from a store)

It was yesterday that David bought a walkman from a store. (强调时间状语 yesterday)

(2). It 强调句式的判断方法

It 强调句式中被强调的成分是句中的某个成分。对句中的某个成分进行强调,就是把该成分提到强调句式的 It is/was 之后,that/who 之前。可以看出,强调位置上的成分正好是 that/who 后面句子中所缺少的成分。因此,把一个句子中的 It is/was...that/who...这一框架去掉以后,剩余的仍是一个完整的句子(若是强调宾语,需适当调整一下语序),我们就可以判断该句为强调句式。如:It was a factory that we visited last Sunday. 若去掉 It was...that...这一框架,剩余部分稍作语序上的调整可成为 We visited a factory last Sunday. 这是一个完整的句子,所以原句是强调句式。

再如:It is a fact that we visited a factory last week.若去掉 It is...that...框架,剩余的部分不是完整的句子,所以原句不是强调句式,是一个含有主语从句的主从复合句。

- (3). It 强调句式的判断误区
- ① 把具有实际意义的指示代词 it 后接 be...that (that 引导定语从句)...的情形误认为是强调句式。如:
- -What's on your desk?
- —Oh, it's the very dictionary that you've been looking for.

此句对话的意思是:"你书桌上放着什么?""正是你一直在找的那本词典"。其中 it 指代前句中的 what , that 引导定语从句修饰 dictionary , 全句是一个含有定语从句的主从复合句 , 不是强调句式。

② 把充当形式主语的 it 后接 be...that(that 引起主语从句)...的情形误认为是强调句式。如:

It is a pity that Jack should have missed the wonderful film.

强调结构

强调结构

在句子当中,有时为了突出句子的某些成分以加强语气、增强感情色彩或加强对比,需要改变句子结构,这种结构叫做强调结构(Emphatic Structure)。强调结构通常采用四种方式进行强调。

1. Do (does/did) + 动词原形表强调

这种结构用来强调谓语动词,往往只用于"一般现在时/过去时"的肯定陈述句或肯定结构的祈使句。如:

He does know the place well.

他的确很熟悉这个地方。

The children do hope to go to college.

孩子们真的很想上大学。

She did come yesterday.

昨天她确实来过。

Do come and visit us!

你一定来看我们!

Do shut up!

你闭上嘴巴!

Do be careful!

务必小心。

2. 用 what 引导的名词从句来强调主语和宾语

What hurt me most was her indifference.

最让我伤心的是她漠不关心的态度。(比较: Her indifference hurt me most.)

What they value most is freedom and independence.

他们最珍惜的是自由和独立。(比较: They value freedom and independence most.)

What I need is some rest.

我需要的是休息。(比较: I need some rest.)

What they lack is experience.

他们缺少的是经验。(比较: They lack experience.)

3. 改变语序,将所强调的状语置于句首

(1) 为了加强语气或为了上下文的衔接通顺。如:

On his desk I found a book about love story.

在他的桌子上我发现了一本关于爱情故事的书。

Suddenly the rain stopped.

突然间雨停了。

Under her arm she was carrying a great album.

她的腋下挟着一本很大的相册。

(2) 在谓语动词为 come, sit, lie,

stand 和 walk 等不及物动词时,为了强调状语,通常将强调的状语放在句首,其语序是动词在前,主语在后,不借用助动词 do。如:

In a corner of the room sat a little girl.

房间的角落里坐着一个小女孩。

Down the street marched the band.

乐队沿着街道走远了。

Here comes the devil.

说曹操,曹操到。

(3) 以否定副词如 never, not only, hardly, no sooner, seldom, at no time,on no account,in no way 等开头的句子表示强调。注意此时句子为倒装要借用助动词 do/does/did 或 have/has/ had 来构成。如:

Not only did we lose our money, but we were also in danger of losing our lives.

我们不仅丢了钱,还险些丢了命。

Hardly had I entered the room when the telephone started to ring.

附录

标点符号的用法

1. 概述

标点符号是书面语中一系列表停顿、节奏和语调等的符号,用以表示句子或句子成分的隔离或特指。如:

China is in Asia. It is a vast and beautiful land. 中国地处亚洲。它幅员辽阔而美丽。

(句号在两句之间起隔离作用)

How calm the sea is! 大海多么平静啊!(感叹号特指惊讶或赞赏)

英语常用标点符号与汉语的标点符号比较:

英语标点符号		汉语标点符号	
符号	名称	符号	名称
	period (full stop)	۰	句号
,	comma	,	逗号
:	colon	:	冒号
;	Semicolon	;	分号
?	question mark	?	问号
!	Exclamation mark	!	感叹号
_	Dask	_	破折号
11 11 1 1	Quotation marks	"" '' ===	引号
-	Hayphen	无	连字线
,	apostrophe	无	省字符

注: 英语标点符号除上述十种外,还有删节号(通常为...)、括号(()、[]、()、{}等)、斜线(/或\)、星号(*)、代字号(~)、脱字号(^)、小记号(\checkmark)、斜十字(\times)、斜体字以及字下划线等。

2. Full stop(美式英语称 period)句号(.)

(1). 句号用在一句子的末尾,表示一句话说完后的停顿。句号不但用于陈述句,亦可用于祈使句和疑问句。如:

I really don't know. 我确实不知道。(陈述句) Take it or leave it. 要就要,不要就算。(祈使句)

Will you weigh it , please. 请你称一称它。(不需要对方回答的疑问句)

(2). 用于缩略语、编号的数字和字母后。如:

kg.公斤 a.m.上午 No.第..... n. 名词 Mr 先生 1 . A . (表示第一条 , A 项)

3. Full stop(美式英语称 period)句号(.)

(1). 在句子里面用于并列的词语之间。如:

Id you keep calm, tak eyour time, concentrate and think ahead, you'll pass your drinving test.

假如你保持镇定、不慌不忙、集中精力注意前方,驾驶考试就能及格。

(2). 常用于主句与状语从句或较长的词组之间。如:

When a policyholder has a loss, he or she asks for payment from the insurance company. 当投保人遭受损失后,他们要求保险公司支付损失。

(3).用于在句首非限定的或无动词的短语之后。如:

Discoved in 1789 and isolated from other elements in 1841, uranium is valued as a source of atomic enegy.

铀于 1789 年被发现, 1841 年被从其他元素中分离出来, 它被珍视为原子能的一个来源。

(4). 用以将引导性词语或转折性词语(如 there fore, however, by the way, for instance, on the contrary)与句子的其余部分隔开。

如: In the United States, for example, nodding your hand up and down means "yes". In the same parts of Green and Turkey, hower, this motion can mean" no'。

比如在美国,点头表示"是"或"可以",而在希腊和土耳其的某些地区,这一动作却表示"不行"。

(5).用于插入句中的从句等成分的前后。如:

Every individual cell, whether it exists as an independent microorganism or is part of a complex creature, has its own life circle.

每个单独的细胞,不论它是作为一个独立的微生物而存在,还是作为一个复杂生物的一部分而存在,都有自己的生命周期。

(6). 用于非限定性定语从句或同位短语前后,进一步说明前面的名词或句子。如:

The painter lived more than a decade in Europe, where he could be in close contact with other cubists.

(7).有时用以分隔并列复合句(尤指较长的),用于连词(如 and ,as,but,for,or)之前。如:

The fragrances of many natural substances comes from oils, and this oils may be used in manufacturing perfumes.

许多自然物质的香味来自油类,因此,这样的油可以用来生产香水。

(8). 用以将附加疑问句或类似词语与句中其余部分隔开。如:

He is an excellent scholar, isn't he? 他是位优秀的学者,是吗?

(9). 在直接引语中作者提示"某某说"之类的词语(如 he said, she told, etc.)用逗号与引用语分开。如:

"This house is very big an dbeautiful" said Fritz. "这所房子又大又漂亮," 弗里茨说。

(10). 引语里面的引语用逗号隔开。如:

"When the Judge said, 'Not guilty', I could have hugged him."

"当法官宣布 , '无罪' , 我当时真想去拥抱他。

(11). 用于表示日期。如: May 1, 2003 2003 年五月一日

4. Colon 冒号(:)

(1). 用以表示一些或一类事物的用语之后或用于说明性的词语(如 as follows, in the following manner)之后,用来提起下文各项。如:

I can't go on my vacation this summer. The main reasons are as follows: firstly, I have no money; second, Ihave no time.

今年夏天我不能去度假。主要原因如下:首先是没钱,其次是没时间。

Open-pit mining follows the same sequence of oprations as underground mining: drilling, blasting, and loading and removing waste and ore.

露天采矿遵循与地下采矿相同的作业顺序:钻孔、爆破、装载并运走废料和矿石。

(2).(郑重文体)用于说明或解释主句的从句或词组之前。如:

The garden had been neglected for a long time.

那个花园长期无人照料,里面长满了杂草。

(3).用以表示时间。如:6:30p.m.下午六点三十分

5. Semicolon 分号(;)

(1).用以代替逗号,隔开句中已含逗号的部分。如:

She wanted to be successful, whatever it might cost; to achieve her goal, whoever might sufferas a result.

她决意求成,不惜一切代价;为达到目的,不管谁遭殃。

(2).(郑重用法)用以隔开并列从句,尤用于无连词的句中。如:

He couldn't have gone home this weekend' I saw him at the ball game on Saturday and in the ibrary on Sunday.

他这个周末不可能回家;我在周六的球赛中看到了他,而且周日在图书馆也看见了他。

The perfectionist is exacting for the sake of exacting; his approach has little to do with the requirements of a situation.

十全十美主义者为苛求而苛求;其方法几乎与形势的需要毫无相干。

6. Question mark 问号(?)

(1). 用于直接问句末尾。如:

where do you live? 你住在什么地方?

May I have a look at your photo? 我可以看你的照片吗?

(2).用于括号内表示存疑。如:

Louis (1287?-1347)路易四世 (1287?-1347)

7.Exclamation mark (美式英语亦称作 Exclamation point) 感叹(!)

(1). 用于表示大怒、惊讶、欣喜或其他强烈感情,置于句子或话语的末尾。如:

What a fine day!选多好的天气啊!

(2).在不规范的用法中,有时用不止一个感叹号或一个感号加一个问号。如:

"Your wife' s just given birth to triplets." "Triplets!?"

"你妻子刚生了三胞胎。" "三胞胎!?"

8.Dash 破折号 (—)

(1). (通俗用法)用以代替冒号或分号,表示对前面的话的解释、总结或结论。如:

He is modest, considerate, warm-hearted—he is a good man.

他谦逊、体谅别人、热心肠——是一个不错的人。

(2). (通俗用法)单个使用或成对使用,以隔开插入句中的附加信息、补充说明或评语。如:

The materials used—copper, stainless steel, concrete and glass—give the building a striking beauty.

这些建筑物所使用的材料——铜、不锈钢、混凝土和玻璃——使这些建筑物更具非凡的魅力。

9.Quotation marks (英式英语亦称作 Inverted commas) 引号 ('' "")

在英式英语中,引号通常用单引号: 'Help!'。在美式英语中通常用双引号: "Help!"。

(1). 用以表明直接引语中的所有词语和标点符号。如:

"What kind of computer did you buy?" she asked . "你买了一种什么样的计算机?" 她问道。

(2).用以引起对文中某特殊词语的注意(如术语或俚语或为某种效果而使用的词语)。如:

The "Little Ice Age" was a period of unsettled weather that lasted from the mid-sixteenth to the early eighteenth century.

"小冰川期" 是从 16 世纪中叶到 18 世纪早期气候变化无常的一个时期。

(3).用以表明文章、短诗歌、广播及电视节目等的名称。如:

I was watching "Soccer Night" . 我正在看 "足球之夜" 。

(4).用以表明短小的引语或谚语。如:

Do you know the origion of the saying "the love of money is the root of all evil"

你是否知道"爱财是万恶之源"这句谚语的出处。

10. Hyphen 连接号(-)

(1).用于复合名词:

有时用以将两个词组成复合词。如:

well-informed 有见识的;消息灵通的 good-looking 好看的 first-rate 第一流的

用以将前缀和专有名词组成复合词。如:

pro-America 亲美 anti-Semitism 反犹太主义

用以将两个词及夹在中间的介词组成复合词。如:

editor-in-chief 总编辑 father-in-law 岳父 comrade-in-arms 战友

(2).(尤用于英式英语)有时以隔开某些带前缀的词,这些前缀的尾字母与后面连接词的首字母为同一元音。如:

co-operation 共同合作 re-elect 重选 pre-eminent 卓越的, 优秀的

(3).用于在一行位置的词的前半部之后。如:

They man who makes no mistakes does not usually make any-thing.

不犯错误的人往往也就是无所作为的人。

(4).用于两个数字或日期之间,意为包括其中的所有数字或日期。如:

pp. 208-345 第 208-345 页 Queen Elizabeth I (1558 - 1603) 伊丽莎白女王一世 (1558 - 1603)

11. Apostrophe 撇号,省略号,名词所有格符号(')

(1). 与 s 连用表示所有格。如:

the cat's tail 猫的尾巴(单数名词) the princess's smile 公主的微笑(以s结尾的单数名词)

Dickens' novels OR Dickens' novel 狄更斯的小说 (以 s 结尾的专有名词)

all the students' books 所有学生的书(以 s 结尾的复数名词) the women's cosmatics 女人的化妆品 (不规则的复数名词)

- (2). 用于缩写式,表示省略了字母或数字。如:
- I' m (=I am) today' d (=they had/would) the spring of '98 (=1998)
- (3). 有时与 s 连用构成字母、数字或缩略语的复数形式。在现代用法中,在一数字或大写字母后,此号常被省去。如: during the 1990' s (during the 1990s) 在二十世纪九十年代

公共场所常见提示用语

公共场所常见提示用语 Useful Phrases in Public Places

Keep Silence 肃静	Smoking Prohibied 严禁吸烟	
Spitting Forbidden 严禁吐痰	No Admittance 不许入内	
Closed 此门不通	Knock 请先敲门	
Push 请向前推	Push 请向后拉	
Queue up for Bus 排队上车	Admittance free 免费入场	
Admission by Ticket Only 凭票入场	Seat by number 对号入座	
Closed during Repairs 儿童谢绝入场	Inspections Declined 谢绝参观	
Closed during Repairs 修理店面,暂停营业	Times's Over 下班时间	
Road up, Detour 马路翻修 , 车辆绕行	No Overtaking 禁止超车	
Danger Ahead 前面危险	Slow(or Drive Slow)车辆慢行	
Commit No Nuisance 禁止小便	Keep Off the Grass 勿踏草地	
Cameras Forbidden 严禁拍照	Shooting Prohibited 严禁打猎	

常见英文名字 Common Forenames

Male nar	nes 男子名	Female f	Names 女子名
forename 人名	meaning 含义	forename 人名	meaning 含义
Aaron 艾伦	巍然的山;受神感召的;开通的	Abigail 阿比盖尔	父亲的欢乐
Adam 亚当	世上第一个男人;男性	Ada 艾达	快乐的;美丽的;出身高贵的
Adrian 艾德里安	住在海边的人	Alexandra 亚历山德拉	男人的保护者
Alan 艾伦	和谐的;英俊的	Andrea 安德烈娅	勇敢的;有男子气概的
Albert 艾伯特	尊贵显赫的	Angela 安杰拉	信使;天使
Alexander 亚历山大	人类保卫者	Ann 安	优美的
Alfred 阿尔弗雷德	聪明的助手	April 阿普里尔	大地回春之时
Angus 安格斯	惟一的;爱神	Barbara 巴巴拉	陌生人;外乡人
Anthony 安东尼	值得颂扬的;备受尊敬的	Beatrice 比阿特丽斯	祈神赐福;创造幸福
Arthur 亚瑟	熊;尊贵的负重者;石头	Betty 贝蒂	上帝的誓约
Ben 本	勇悍的卫士	Blanche 布兰奇	白皙、美丽的
Bill 比尔	勇悍的卫士	Carol 卡罗尔	欢乐之歌;有男子气概的
Brant 布兰特	刀剑	Catherine 凯瑟琳	纯洁的人
Christopher 克里斯托弗	基督的信徒	Charlotte 夏洛特	强壮而有男子气概的
Daniel 丹尼尔	上帝是我的最高审判者	Cheryl 彻丽尔	有男子气概的;珍爱的人
David 大卫	可爱的人;朋友;司令	Christine 克里斯廷	基督的信徒
Dennis 丹尼斯	从酒神 Dionysus 名字而来	Constance 康斯坦斯	坚定的人;恒久忠实的人
Derek 德里克	民族;统治	Crystal 克里斯特尔	纯净的水;水晶
Donald 唐纳德	世界领袖;合格的酋长	Daisy 黛西	雏菊
Edgar 埃德加	快乐的战士	Daphne 达夫妮	月桂树;阿波罗追求的女神
Edmund 埃德蒙	富有的守护者	Diana 黛安娜	光亮似白昼;月亮
Edward 爱德华	富有的财产监督	Dolores 多洛雷斯	圣母玛利亚的
Elliot 艾略特	虔诚信仰上帝的人	Donna 唐娜	贵妇;淑女
Eric 埃里克	领导者	Doris 多丽丝	海洋女神名;属于大海的
Francis 弗朗西斯	自由、无拘束的人	Edith 伊迪丝	格斗;战争
Frank 弗兰克	自由人	Elaine 伊莱恩	光亮的
		Eleanor 埃莉诺	光亮的;肥沃的;有收获的
		Elizabeth 伊丽莎白	上帝的誓约
		Ellen 埃伦	火炬
		Emily 埃米莉	刻苦的;金嗓子;和蔼可亲的
		Emma 埃玛	无所不能的
		Enid 伊妮德	纯洁得毫无瑕疵的

Esther 埃丝特	星星; 爱神之木
Eve 伊夫	生命
Fiona 菲奥纳	美貌的
Frances 弗朗西丝	自由的人
Freda 弗丽达	和平
Georgia 乔治娅	农人
Gloria 格洛丽亚	愉快的人

英语学习网站资源域名 Websites for English Learning

星火英语学习图书网:http://www.sparkenglish.com

无忧英语学习: http://www.soosun.yeah.net

比吉特英语学习网站: http://www.2003xp.onchina.net

英语学习资源网: http://www.englishbase.net 欧赛思教育信息: http://www.eduassess.com.cn

外语世界网: http://www.yeworld.net

阳光跑道: http://www.sunnychicane2001.myrice.com

英语快车: http://www.onlinesjtu.com/english
空中美语: http://www.englishdigest.com

沛沛英语: http://www.ppenglish.com.cn洪恩在线: http://www.enlegnet.com学英语报社: http://www.enlegnet.com

英语时空: http://www.yysk.net

英语比萨园地: http://www.epizza.nease.net
英语麦当劳: http://www.epilishcn.com
高中英语网: http://www.jibinxin.y365.com
牛津英语在线: http://www.oeol.com

实用生活美语俱乐部: http://www.alenet.com.tw

高中英语语法阅读与书面表达网: http://www.shrek.myrice.com
21 世纪报英语教学网: http://www.21stcentury.chinadaily.com.cn
笨笨鸟英语阅读: http://www.haozuowen.nease.net/eread

生活中常见的英语缩略词 Useful Abbreviations

ADSL 英文 Asymmetrical Digital Subscriber Line 的缩写,又名网络快车。

APEC 英文 Asian-Pacific Economic Cooperation 的缩写,即亚太经济合作组织。

AQ 英文 Adversity Quotient 的缩写, 逆境商数, 指一个人处理逆境的能力。

ATM 英文 Automatic Teller mACHINE 的缩写,即自动柜员机,又称自动取款机。

BBS 英文 Bulletin Board System 的缩写,公告牌系统或电子公告板。

BSS 英文 Base Station System 的缩写,即基站系统,指移动通信中的空中接口部分。

CARM 英文 Chinese Association of Rehabilitation Medicine 的缩写,即中国康复医学会。

CATV 英文 Cable Television 的缩写,即有线电视。

CBD 英文 Central Business District 的缩写,又称中央商务区。

CCEL 英文 China Certification Committee for Environment Labelling Production 的缩写,即中国环境标志产品认证委员会。

CD-ROM 英文 Compact Cisk-Read Only Memory 的缩写,即光盘只读存储器,也就是人们常说的光驱。

CEO 英文 Chief Enective Officer 的缩写,即首席执行官。

CET 英文 College English Test 的缩写,即大学英语测试。

CFO 英文 Chief Finance Officer 的缩写,即首席财务主管。

CGFNS 英文 Commission on Graduates of Foreign Nuring Schools 的缩写,即外国护士毕业生委员会。

CGO 英文 Chief Government Officer 的缩写,即首席沟通主管,主要负责与政府机构之间的交流与沟通。

DhinaNET 英文 Chian Network 的缩写,即中国公用计算机网,它是政府建立的计算机网络之一,与之相对应的有中国教育网等。

CI 英文 Corporate Identity 的缩写,即企业形象统一战略,指对企业的独特性和目标加以明确化和统一化,并在企业内外公众之中为建立这种印象而开展的有组织的活动。

CID 英文 Central Information District 的缩写,即中央信息区。

CIO 英文 Chif Information Officer 的缩写,即首席信息主管,国内某些机构也称信息中心主任。它是企业信息化发展到一定程度的必然产物,基本上代表企业的信息化程度。

CA 英文 Certified Public Accountant 的缩写,即注册会计师,指依法取得注册资金会计师证书并接受委托,从事审计和会计咨询、会计服务业务的执业人员。

CPI 英文 Consumer Price Index 的缩写,即全国居民消费价格指数。

CPU 英文 Central Processing Unit 的缩写,又称微处理器,由集成度较高的集成电路芯片组成的大规模和超大规模集成电路,包括运算器和控制器两部分。

CS 英文 customer satisfaction 的缩写,指企业为了使顾客完全满意自己的产品或服务,综合、客观地测定顾客的满意程度,并根据调查分析结果,促使整个企业一体来改善产品、服务及企业文化的一种经营战略。

CSCL 英文 computer-supported Collaborative Learning 的缩写,是一种利用计算机技术(尤其是多媒体网络技术)来辅助和支持的协作学习。

CTO 英文 Chief Technology Officer 的缩写,即首席技术主管。

DDN 英文 Digital Data Network 的缩写,即数字数据网。

DHL 英文 DHL Worldwide Express 即国际航空速递巨头——敦豪环球速递公司。

DOS 英文 Dis Opening System 的缩写,又称磁盘操作系统。

DV 英文 Digital Vedio 的缩写,即数码摄像,现又多指由个人制作的数字影像作品。

E-Book 以电子版的方式在互联网上出版发行的书籍。

E-Learning 又称 On-Line Learning,即在线学习,一种网络时代的学习方式。

E-MAIL 电子邮件,这是一种利用 Internet 网交换文字信息的交互式服务,全世界 Internet 用户可以互相发送和接收电子邮件。

EMBA 英文 Executive Mster of Business Administration 的缩写,即高级经理工商管理硕士,是面向企业和政府经济管理部门高级管理人员的硕士层次的管理教育,国外又称"总裁班"。

EPD 英文 Eviroment People and development 的缩写,意为环境人口与可持续发展教育,是联合国教科文组织的跨学科项目。

EQ 英文 Emotional Quotient 的缩写,即情商,又称情绪智力,是近年来心理学家提出的与智力和智商相对应的概念。它主要是指人在情绪、情感、意志、耐受挫折等方面的品质。

EVA 英文 Economic Value Added 的缩写,即经济增加值,指在扣除产生利润而投资的资本的成本之后所剩下的利润。

FUN 新型的家庭生活方式,也就是现代健康家庭的三个要素:F代表健身,U代表和谐,N代表营养。

GDP 英文 Gross Domestic Product 的缩写,即国内生产总值。

GMAT 英文 Graduate Management Admission 的缩写,即管理类专业的研究生入学考试。

GNP 英文 Gross National Product 的缩写,即国民生产总值,指在一定时期内一国各部门所提供的产品和劳务的价值总和,是反映一国经济状况的综合性指标。

GPS 英文 Global Position System 的缩写,即全球定位系统,为国际上使用的定位系统。该系统通过卫星发射标准时间信息和精确的经纬度地点信息,通过 GPS 终端可以接收这些信息。

GRE 英文 Graduate Record Examamination 的缩写,由美国教育考试服务中心(ETS)主办的美国硕士研究生入学资格考试。美国和加拿大的大多数研究生院要求申请者有 GRE 成绩,作为评定申请者能力的可靠依据。

GSM 英文 Grabal Record Examination 的缩写,是全球移动通信系统无线系统的一种通讯制式,使用时隙来区分无线信道。起源于欧洲,目前是世界上使用最广泛的一种无线通讯制式。

HDCD 英文 High Definition Compact Disc 的缩写,即高清晰的 CD 的简称,是当今唱片业制作技术发展的最新、最高科技的代表。

HDTV 英文 High definition Television 的缩写,即高清晰度数字电视。

HTTP 英文 Hyper Text Transfer Protocol 的缩写,即超文本传输协议。

IBM 英文 Internetional Business Machine 的缩写,即国际商用机器公司,是美国的跨国企业,其业务几乎涉足所有信息行业,尤其以计算机产品著名。

ICP 英文 Internet Content Provider 的缩写,是互联网内容提供商指定为互联网提供实际内容的实体。

Internet 为 Internet net 的简写,即因特网,又称国际互联网。

ISND 英文 Integrated service Digital Network 的缩写,即综合业务数字网。1972 年 CCITT 提出这一概念。80 年代初实现了用户线数字传输技术人实用化。

ISO 英文 International Organization for Standardization 的缩写,国际标准化组织,是制定和管理各种标准的国际化组织。

ITU 英文 International Telecommunication Union 的缩写,是国际电信联盟国际上的电信标准制定的管理机构,绝大多数的通讯标准都要经过它的认可或制定。其前身是 CCITT。

MBA 英文 Mater of Business Administration 的缩写,即工商管理硕士专业学位。

MMS 英文 Multimedia Messaging Service 的缩写,即多媒体信息服务。

MODEM 英文 Modulator Demodulator 的缩写,即调制解调器。

MPA 英文 Mster of Public Administration 的缩写,即公共管理硕士。

MS 英文 Mobile Station 的缩写,即移动系统终端,也就是通常所说的手机。

MSC 英文 Mobile Switch Center 的缩写,即移动交换中心,指移动通信系统中的交换部分,其功能主要是完成信令和话路交换、移动性管理、漫游管理等。

NMD 英文 National Missile Defense 的缩写,即国家导弹防御计划。

OEM 英文 Original Equipment Manufacturer 的缩写,即原始设备制造商。

OICQ 英文 Open ICQ 的缩写(ICQ 为英文 I See You 的谐音),简称 QQ,是目前流行的一种网上聊天软件。

OTC 英文 Over the Counter 的缩写,即非处方药。

PETS 英文 Public English Test System 缩写,即全国公共英语等级考试。

PDA 英文 Personal Digital Assistant 的缩写,字面意思是"个人数字助理"。

PMP 英文 Project Management Professional 的缩写,即项目管理专业人员资格认证。

PNIR 英文 Perfomanent Normal Trade Relationship 的缩写,即永久正常贸易关系。

PSIN 英文 Public Switch Telephone Network 的缩写,是"公用电话交换网"的通俗说法。

SC 英文 Security Council 的缩写,即联合国的"安全理事会",简称"安理会"

SMS 英文 Short Message Servince 的缩写,指移动数据通讯中的短消息业务。

TOEFL 英文 Test of English As a foreign Language 的缩写,即"托福"。

TOPE 英文 Test of Spoken Professional English 的缩写,即 ETS 职业英语考试。

TSE 英文 Test of Spoken English 的缩写,即英语口语考试,是美国教育考试服务中心为非英语国家的学生提供的英语口语水平考试,主要测验考生的口语能力。

UP 英文 Universal Postal Union 的缩写,即万国邮政联盟。

USB 英文 Univeral Serial Bus 的缩写,即通用串口总线。

WPS 英文 Word Processing System 的缩写,一种集编辑、排版和打印一体的汉字处理系统。

WTP 英文 Wold Trade Organization 的缩写,即世界贸易组织。

WWWWorld Wide Web 的缩写,即全球网,又称万维网。